Ministerstvo školstva SR na základe odporúčania štátneho pedagogického ústavu zaradilo túto publikáciu do zoznamu odporúčaných učebníc pre stredné školy.

Angličtina

nová maturita
základná úroveň

Andrea Billíková
Soňa Preložníková

enigma
Angličtina – nová maturita – základná úroveň je určená studentům, kteří si rozumímat v anglickém jazyce na základní úrovni. Zahrnuje přípravu na ústní a písomnou část maturitní skúšky z angličtiny.

První část knihy (ústní část) obsahuje 20 vypracovaných maturitních témat v 20 lekcích. Jednotlivé lekce obsahují otázky na konverzaci k dané tématu, úvodní text s vyváženou křížovou slovnou zásobou a frázemi, zoznam slovnej zásoby a frází s prekladom, cvičenia na zopakovanie slovnnej zásoby a najbežnejších konverzačných frází, vzorové zadania úloh pre ústnu (internú) časť maturity. Úvodné texty sú načtené lektormi na CD, ktoré je súčasťou knihy.

Druhá časť knihy (písomná časť) predstavuje 10 úloh na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením, 10 úloh na precvičenie anglické gramatiky a 10 úloh na prácu s textom. Úlohy sú typologicky zostavené podľa požiadaviek na externú časť maturitnej skúšky. Súčasťou tejto časti knihy je aj prepis nahrávok a klúč k práci s odpovedmi na úlohy. CD obsahuje monologické a dialogické texty, ktoré sú na povinné anglickými, franskými, anglickými a slovenskými učitelia angličtiny. Studentom ponúkame vypracované modelové úlohy na precvičenie formálnych a neformálnych listov, eseje, príbeh, správy a opisu. Pri každom útvaru sú uvedené zoznamy „sprievodca“ a cenné rady, ako správne písať a o čom písať.

Tretia časť knihy zahrnuje doplnkové čítanie faktografických textov o anglicky hororických krajinách a mestách a o Slovensku, zoznam zúčastných výrazov a fráz na riadenie konverzácie a krátké ukážky dialogov v angličtine. Tu uvádza aj stručný prehľad anglické gramatiky, zoznam nepravidelných slov, slovotvorbu a základné frázové slovesá.

Klúč k ústnej a písomnej časti a prepisy nahrávok sú na oddelitelných listoch.

Angličtina – nová maturita – základná úroveň je vhodná na individuálne štúdium i na prácu v triede. Táto učebnica bola napsaná v snahe uložit prácu učiteľom a prípravu maturantov. Veríme, že sa pre vás stane praxickou pomocou na hodinách angličtiny.

Veľa štastia!

Autorky
Podakovanie
Naše podakovanie patri predovšetkým PaedDr. Kataríne Vasočkovej z SOU Dvorchanská 629 v Nitre a jej studentom za ich cenné pripomienky pri písaní tejto knihy. Ďalej dávame kolektív učiteľov anglicky zo Združenej strednej školy dopravy, obchodu a služieb v Nitre a tiež studentom školy, ktorí nám pomohli otestovať túto knihu. Osobitne dávame lektorom z USA, Veľkej Británie, Írska a Slovenska za ich pomoc pri nahrávani CD a Johnovi Kehoeovi a Martinovi Mačurovi za jazykovú korektúru.

Obsah / Contents

A ÚSTNA ČAST: Maturitné témy a konverzačné úlohy ........................................... 9
Lekcia 1: Family (Rodina) ......................................................................................... 15
Lekcia 2: Culture and Art (Kultúra a umenie) ......................................................... 20
Lekcia 3: Sports and Games ( Športy a hry) ............................................................... 25
Lekcia 4: Housing (Bývanie) ................................................................................. 30
Lekcia 5: Shopping and Services (Obchod a služby) ............................................. 36
Lekcia 6: Health Care (Starostlivosť o zdravie) .................................................. 42
Lekcia 7: Travelling (Cestovanie) ........................................................................... 48
Lekcia 8: Education (Vzdelanie) .............................................................................. 55
Lekcia 9: Jobs (Zamestnanie) .................................................................................... 61
Lekcia 10: People and Nature (Ludia a príroda) ................................................... 68
Lekcia 11: Science and Technology (Veda a technika) ............................................ 73
Lekcia 12: People and Society (Ludia a spoločnosť) ........................................... 79
Lekcia 13: The Young and Their World (Mládež a jej svet) ................................. 85
Lekcia 14: Food (Stravovanie) .................................................................................. 90
Lekcia 15: Hobbies, Leisure and Lifestyle (Záľuby, volný čas a životný štyl) .... 96
Lekcia 16: Multicultural Society (Multikultúrna spoločnosť) ......................... 102
Lekcia 17: Towns and Places (Mestá a miesta) ..................................................... 109
Lekcia 18: Fashion (Móda) ....................................................................................... 115
Lekcia 19: English-Speaking Countries (Anglický hovoria krajin) ................. 121
Lekcia 20: Slovakia – My Homeland (Slovensko – moja vlast) ......................... 126
KEY (kľúč k ústnej časti – oddeliteľný) .......................................................... 132

B PÍSMNÁ ČAST .......................................................... 136
LISTENING TASKS (úlohy na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením) ........... 137
Tapescripts (prepis nahrávok – oddeliteľný) ....................................................... 144
LANGUAGE IN USE (úlohy na precvičenie anglickej gramatiky) .................... 149
READING TASKS (práca s textom) ................................................................. 159
WRITING TASKS (úlohy na precvičenie písania) .............................................. 170
Writing – Examples (ukážky písania vybraných žánrov v angličtine) ........... 172
KEY (kľúč k písomnej časti – oddeliteľný) ........................................................ 178
C DOPLNKOVÝ MATERIÁL ................................................................. 181
ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES AND SLOVAKIA
(anglicky hovoriace krajiny a Slovensko) ......................... 182
SOME USEFUL PHRASES AND EXPRESSIONS
(niekteré užitočné frázy a výrazy) ........................................ 196
SHORT DIALOGUES (krátke dialogy) ....................................... 201
SHORT SUMMARY OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR
(stručný prehľad anglickej gramatiky) ................................. 206
IRREGULAR VERBS (zoznam nepravidelných slovies) .......... 225
WORD FORMATION (slovotvorba) ........................................ 230
BASIC PHRASAL VERBS (základné frážové slovesá) ............ 233

ÚSTNA ČASŤ
MATURITNÉ TÉMY
A KONVERZAČNÉ ÚLOHY
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOPIC / TÉMA</th>
<th>CONTENTS / OBSAH</th>
<th>FUNCTIONS / FUNKCIE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 FAMILY Rodina</td>
<td>Family members and their roles (členovia rodu a ich roly) Relationships among people (medziludské vzťahy)</td>
<td>Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 CULTURE AND ART Kultúra a umenie</td>
<td>Different types of culture and art (rôzne druhy kultúry a umenia) Culture in towns and in the country (kultúra v meste a na vidieku) Famous artists (známí umelci)</td>
<td>Recommendation (odporúčania) Invitation, accepting/refusing (pozvanie, prijatie a odmietnutie pozvania)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 SPORTS AND GAMES Športy a hry</td>
<td>Types of sports and games (typy športov a hier) Popular sports and games in England, the USA and Slovakia (oblúbené športy a hry v Anglicku, USA a na Slovensku)</td>
<td>Asking questions (kladenie otázok) interviewing a famous sportsman (rozhovor so známym športovcom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 HOUSING Byty</td>
<td>Living in a town and in the country (byvania v meste a na vidieku) Types of housing (rôzne druhy byvania) Housing in Slovakia, Britain and the USA (byvania na Slovensku, v Británii a v USA) My dream house (predstavy o vlastnom byvaniu)</td>
<td>Describing a house (opsis domu) Advantages and disadvantages (výhody a nevýhody)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES Obchody a služby</td>
<td>Shopping possibilities (možnosti nakupovania) Shopping centres versus small specialised shops (obchodné centrá versus malé specializované obchody) Services – post, bank (služby – pošta, banka)</td>
<td>Complaining and apologising (státnosť a aspravedlenie sa) Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 HEALTH CARE Starostlivosť o zdravie</td>
<td>Human body (ludské telo) At the doctor’s (u lekára) How to keep fit (ako zostať zdravý)</td>
<td>Expressing sympathy (vyjadrenie súcitu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 TRAVELING Cestovanie</td>
<td>Getting ready for a journey (priprava na cestu) Means of transport (dopravné prostriedky) Orientation in town (orientácia v meste)</td>
<td>Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme) Asking and giving directions (vypráviam sa na cestu a udávam smereň)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 EDUCATION Vzdelanie</td>
<td>Types of schools (typy škôl) School subjects, organisation of the school year, holidays (školské predmety, organizácia školského roka, prázdniny) Qualities of a good student/teacher (charakteristika dobrého Žiaka/učiteľa) Extracurricular activities (mimoškolné aktivity)</td>
<td>Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru) Agreeing/disagreeing with an opinion (súhlas/nesúhlas s názorom) Giving a short presentation about my school (krátka prezentácia mojej školy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 JOBS Zamestnanie</td>
<td>Choice of job and motivation (volba povolania a motivácia) Curriculum vitae (životopis) Getting ready for my future job (priprava na moje budúce povolanie)</td>
<td>Job Interview – questions and answers (pohovor pri uchádzaní sa o prácu – otázky a odpovede)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 PEOPLE AND NATURE Ľudia a príroda</td>
<td>Seasons and weather (ročné obdobia a počasie) Nature around us – fauna and flora (príroda okolo nás – fauna a flóra) Trip to the country (výlet na vidieku)</td>
<td>Talking about weather (rozhovor o počasi) Prohibitions (vyjadrenie zakazu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY Veda a technika</td>
<td>Life with and without inventions (život s vynešením a bez nich) Interesting inventions (pozoruhodné objavy) What I use – computer, mobile, television (čo využívam – počítač, mobil, televízor)</td>
<td>Describing a machine – its size, shape, material and usage (ops prístroja – veľkosť, tvar, materiál a použitie)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY
Cudia a spoločnosť

str. 79

Social behaviour of the young and the old
(spoľočenské správanie mladých a starších
ludí)

Social etiquette, greetings, meetings, visits, social
conversation
(spoľočenská etiketa, pozdravy, stretnutia,
návštevy, spoľočenská konverzácia)

Communication among people
(komunikácia v rôznych situáciách)

Making a request
(páčia sa niečo)

Offering help
(pomôžem)

13 THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD
Mládež a jej svet

str. 85

The young, their characteristics, hobbies and activities
(mladí ľudia, ich charakteristiky, záujmy
a aktivity)

Place of the young in the society
(postavenie mladých v spoločnosti)

Friendship and love
(priateľstvo a láskav)

Describing people – their appearance, qualities, lifestyle, opinions, problems
(opis ľuďov, ich zovití, vlastnosti, životný štýl, názory, problémy)

14 FOOD
Stravovanie

str. 90

Food and drinks – breakfast, lunch, dinner
(jedá a nápoje – raňajky, obed, večera)

National cuisines
(národné kuchyne)

Eating at home, at school, at a restaurant
(stravovanie doma, v škole, v reštaurácii)

My favourite food
(moje obľúbené jedlo)

Describing the process of food preparation – recipes
(opis procesu varenia – recepty)

Expressing compliments and criticism about the food
(hodnotenie jedla)

15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE
Zážuby, volný čas
a životný štýl

str. 96

How to spend free time
(možnosti trávenia volného času)

Organised leisure activities – extracurricular activities, clubs
(organizované mimoškolské aktivity
a kluby)

Individual interests – art, books, hiking
(individuálne záujmy – umenie, knihy,
turistika)

Expressing opinion
(vyjednávanie názorov)

Asking for information
(získovanie informácií)

Expressions to fill time in conversation
(ťavy na vypĺňanie času počas konverzácie)

16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY
Multikultúrne spoločnosti

str. 102

Multiculturalism and its understanding
(multikultúrnost a jej chápanie)

Cultural exchanges
(spoznávanie iných kultúr)

Holidays, habits and traditions
(sviatky, zvyky a tradície)

Countries and nationalities
(krajiny a národenstvá)

Describing advantages and disadvantages
(opis výhod a nevýhod)

17 TOWNS AND PLACES
Mestá a miesta

str. 109

Important places in my life
(dôležité miesta v mojom životnom
až životnom spoločenskom životnom)

Guiding tourists
(správo místnych a turistov)

Interesting places for tourists
(turisticky zaujímavé miesta)

Describing a place
(opis miesta)

Recommendations
(odporúčania)

18 FASHION
Móda

str. 115

Attitude of people towards fashion
(postoj ľudí k móde)

Weather and clothing
(počasie a oblečenie)

Clothes for different occasions
(oblečenie na rôzne príležitosti)

Taking care of clothes
(ochraná oblečenia)

Tailored clothes versus ready-made
(ostrá šité na miesto urobené)

Giving compliments/ criticizing
(komplimenty a kritika)

19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES
Anglicky hovoriaci
krajiny

str. 121

Country and its inhabitants
(krajina a jej obyvateľ

Places I would like to visit
(miesto, ktoré by som rád navštívil

Habits and traditions
(zvyky a tradície)

Expressing wishes
(vyjadrenie želania)

(pozn: ďalešie informácie na str. 181)
A family usually consists of a mother, father and children, who live together in one home. A functioning family should provide protection, education, help and security to all its members. Strong relationships are often created between siblings, cousins, parents, aunts, uncles, grandparents and other relatives.

All family members have some duties and responsibilities. Parents should teach their children what is good and bad, how to solve problems in life, how to become an independent person and care about others. Democratic parents talk with their children and respect them. Strict parents do not make compromises, which often creates a generation gap between them and their own children. The main duty of children is learning and going to school. They should also help their parents with household.

Modern European families are monogamous. Most of young people get married in their late twenties or early thirties. Many young people live together in the same home but are not a husband and wife. This is called cohabitation. Older generations think this is not correct.

The wedding is a formal act and it takes place in a town hall or in a church. The engaged couple exchange their wedding rings and promise themselves to live together in good and bad and in illness too. Nowadays, many couples are divorced. Their frequent reasons for a divorce are problems with trust, money, living with parents and parents-in-law, alcohol, drugs, gambling and unemployment.

When one of the parents dies, children stay with a single parent. A woman who loses her husband is called a widow and a man a widower. When they get married again, the new parents are called step-parents. Sometimes, divorced parents get married once again. Bad relationships with new step-parents lead to problems and frequent arguments.

Family life is different all around the world. In Slovakia many families meet together for special days, such as birthdays, weddings, feasts and funerals. A family, a real home and relatives are what we need for life. They always help us when we need them.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What does family mean to you?
2. What are the functions of a family?
3. What are the main roles of children and parents in a family?
4. What is cohabitation?
5. Why do people get divorced?
6. When does your family usually get together?

☐ PRACTICE TASKS

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: mother – father

mother brother mother-in-law aunt niece grandfather daughter sister-in-law husband father sister uncle nephew father-in-law grandmother wife son brother-in-law

B Introduce yourself and then describe your own family. Use the following phrases.

My name is... My surname is...
I was born on (day, month) in (year).
I am single/married/divorced.
I have got one child/two children/no children.
In my family there are (mother, father, sister, brother).
I have a younger (older) brother/sister.
I am the youngest/middle/oldest... in our family.
My parents are (friendly, democratic, strict, authoritative...).
My grandparents are (alive, dead, retired, still working...).
They live/lived in (place of living).
We all live in a (family house, flat) in... (a town, village) called...
We share housework in our family. My mother (cooks, cleans, washes up, does shopping).
My father is responsible for...
I help my parents with...
I have the best relationship with my...
I like my (aunt/uncle/cousin...) most because he/she is (a funny person, empathic, nice to me...).
The head of our family is... He/she is very (clever, hardworking, friendly...).
We usually meet (at birthday parties, barbecues, Christmas, Easter, weddings, funerals).
We are a (large/small/happy/sad/functioning) family.

C Put a tick (✓) to those activities which you do in your family.

Example: We go to church on Sundays. (✓)

a) We eat in restaurants.
b) We go fishing.
c) We watch television.
d) We work in our garden.
e) We play cards.
f) We visit our grandparents.
g) We cook special meals.
h) We meet together at Christmas.
i) We have barbecues.
j) We go abroad for holidays.
k) We share housework.
l) We share our car.

D Express your opinion. What do you think, what are the qualities of an ideal father and mother? Use the phrases and vocabulary below to help you.

I think that an ideal father/mother should/shouldn’t be...

friendly democratic liberal strict helpful reliable empathic responsible

In my opinion ideal parents should/shouldn’t...

listen to their children talk to their children make compromises solve their children’s problems buy their children what they want spend weekends with their children punish their children

☐ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 1 FAMILY

Task 1

Describe the people in the pictures below. Talk about the relationships between them. Is it the same or different in your family? Discuss it.
Task 2

Talk about the special days in your family, such as birthday parties or Christmases. Talk about:

- how you celebrate them,
- who your guests are,
- what food you have,
- what you do together.

Task 3: Role-play

You: You think that your parents do not give you enough pocket money. Talk to your mother about it. Tell her what you need money for and how much you would like to get. Give good arguments to persuade her to give you more money.

Your partner: You are a mother of a teenager who always asks for money. You think that he/she gets enough pocket money. You are not going to give him/her more money because you know that the money is often spent on cigarettes.

Vocabulary: FAMILY

- **Nouns**
  - argument - hádka, debata
  - aunt - teta
  - brother-in-law - švagor
  - church - kostol
  - cohabitation - spolužitie
  - couple - pár
  - cousin - bratranec, sesternica
  - duty - povinnosť
  - father-in-law - svokor
  - feast - hody
  - funeral - pohreb
  - gambling - hazardné hranie
  - generation gap - generačný rozdiel
  - grandparents - starí rodičia
  - guest - host
  - housework - práca v domácnosti
  - husband - manžel
  - mother-in-law - svokra
  - nephew - synovec
  - niece - netor
  - parent - rodič
  - pocket money - vreckové peniaze
  - protection - ochrana

- **Adjectives**
  - alive - žijúci, naivné, život
  - clever - bystry
  - divorced - rozvedený
  - engaged - zakázaný
  - hard-working - pracovitý
  - helpful - napomocný

- **Phrases**
  - Expressing opinion - vyjadrenie názoru
    - I think/believe that... - Myšlim si, že...
    - In my opinion... - Podľa môjho názoru...

- **Verbs**
  - to care about - staráť sa o
  - to celebrate - oslavovať
  - to consist of - pozostávať z
  - to describe - opisovať
  - to get married - oženiť sa/vydať sa
  - to lead to - viest’ k
  - to lose - stratit’
  - to promise - sľubiť
  - to punish - trestať
  - to solve problems - riešiť problémy
  - to spend money on - minút peniaze na

- **Monogamous (napr. relationship) - monogamý (vztah) - s jedním stálym partnerom**
- reliable - spolahlivý
- responsible - zodpovedný
- retired - na dôchodku
- single (parent) - slobodný (rodič)
- strict - prísný
Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What kind of art are you interested in?
2. Who are your favourite actors?
3. What are the qualities of a good artist?

Culture and art are important for us because they add aesthetic value to our lives. Cultural events are an interesting way how people can spend their free time. Art is a way of communicating feelings. Artists express themselves in many forms - music, literature, architecture, painting, drawing, sculpture. Music, dance and theatre are performing arts. Painting, sculpture, architecture and photography are decorative arts.

Cities offer many cultural attractions to citizens and tourists. People who like classical music can enjoy a chamber music concert in concert halls. Mozart, Beethoven and Bach have become the most important European composers. Fans of different music styles - pop, rock, jazz, blues or country can enjoy music at the festivals, go to see their favourite singers or bands perform live at concerts or simply listen to CDs, MP3 players or watch concerts on DVDs. In towns, people have the possibility to go to the theatre to see various performances. The most popular are musicals. Film lovers can go to cinemas to watch dubbed or subtitled films. The multi-screen air-conditioned complexes in shopping centres are becoming more and more popular. Open-air cinemas are a popular option among the young in summer. The lovers of fine arts can go to galleries to see the artwork of famous painters and sculptors. The works of Picasso, Van Gogh, Rembrandt, Michelangelo are immortal.

Cultural events in villages and rural areas are not very frequent. In Slovak villages, the so-called houses of culture are the main centre of cultural life. The most popular cultural events in villages are dance balls where people dance polka, waltz, tango or modern dances. Slovak villages are famous for promoting folklore traditions. There are folklore festivals of folklore music, dances and songs organised for example in Východná, Myjava, Detva and elsewhere. Nowadays, most young people prefer modern music and modern dance to folklore.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What types of art do you know?
2. What cultural events are organised in your town or village?
3. What kind of music do you like?
4. What are performing and decorative arts?
5. Do you think that the Slovak cinemas offer attractive programmes?
6. Why do people living in the countryside have less opportunities to see cultural events?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** What kind of art are the following words connected with? Music, film, dance, painting, architecture or literature?

**Example:** lyrics – music

lyrics | subtitles | portrait | stone | poem | ballerina | conductor
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
interior design | painter | tango | choreography
actor | novel | architect | poet | gallery | orchestra | cinema

e | f | c | d | s

cartoons | fairy tales | comedies | soap opera | thrillers | love stories | science fiction | documentaries | historical films | horror films | biographical stories | commercials | news | weather forecast | TV shows

**B** Which programmes from the list below do small children/teenagers/older people like watching on TV? Which are your favourite programmes? Why?

cartoons | fairy tales | comedies | soap opera | thrillers | love stories | science fiction | documentaries | historical films | horror films | biographical stories | commercials | news | weather forecast | TV shows

**C** Read the short review of the film below. Decide to whom you would and would NOT recommend it. Choose the best reasons.

MY BIG FAT GREEK WEDDING

Toula Portokalos is 30, Greek and works in her family's restaurant in Chicago. She is not happy with her life and she wants to change it. She starts attending computer classes and becomes a manager of her aunt's travel agency. She meets Ian Miller, an English teacher. They date secretly before her family finds out. Her father is angry that his daughter's boyfriend is not Greek. He has to learn how to accept Ian, Ian has to learn how to accept the noisy Greek family.

Starring Nia Vardalos and John Corbett, Czech subtitles.
Start like this:

I would recommend this film to...
because:
- it’s a film for people who like fun
- it’s about the Greeks and their lifestyle
- it’s probably romantic

I wouldn’t recommend it to...
because:
- it’s a film for older people
- the actors are not very famous
- it’s not dubbed

D Role-play: An Invitation

A: Invite your classmates to go with you to a rock concert of your favourite singer/group. If your classmates accept an invitation, arrange time and place of meeting.
Would you like to go...? Shall we meet...? Let’s meet...

B: You are invited to go to a rock concert by your classmate. Accept an invitation and arrange the details.
Yes, I’d love to. Thank you. Where/when shall we meet...?

C: You are invited to go to a rock concert by your classmate. Refuse an invitation and explain your reasons.
I’m afraid, I can’t... because...

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 2 CULTURE AND ART

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 196

Read the short reviews of the films. Decide which of them is a comedy, horror or fairy tale. Say which one you would like to recommend to your classmates and explain why.

Johny English
When all top secret agents are killed in an explosion, there is only one agent left called Johny English. He has to find out who stole the crown jewels from the Tower of London.

The Ring
A girl dies a week later after she had watched a scary video. A journalist will travel to the Pacific Northwest to search the origins of the tape and connection with crimes at a horse ranch.

Shrek
A ruler of a faraway land banned the fairy tales. But a green, smelly ogre named Shrek, his friend Donkey and beautiful Princess Fiona will stand in his way.

voices of Mike Myers, Eddie Murphy, Cameron Diaz

Task 2

- What kind of art is favourite among children/teenagers/adults/older people?
- What cultural events do they prefer?
- What kind of art are you interested in? Talk about it and say what cultural events you prefer.

Task 3 Simulation

Your friend has recently bought two tickets for a play Romeo and Juliet. He/she has invited you to go with him/her. Unfortunately, you cannot go. Refuse an invitation in a polite way and explain your reasons.

VOCABULARY CULTURE AND ART

- NOUNS
  actor – herc
  art – umenie
  artwork – umelecké dielo
  ball – pies, zábava
  ballerina – baletná tanečníca
  cartoon – kreslený animovaný film/rozprávka
  citizen – obyvateľ mesta, občan
  composer – skladateľ
  conductor – dirigent
  country-side, country – vidieck
  decorative art – dekoratívne umenie
  documentary – dokumentárny film
  drawing – kreslenie
  event – udalosť
  fairy tale – rozprávka
  fan – fanúšik
  fine art – výtvarné umenie
  invitation – pozvanie
  love story – řubostný příbeh

- VERBS
  lyrics – texty piesní
  novel – román
  ogre – obor, ozrta
  open-air cinema – amfiteáter
  orchestra – orchester
  origin – pôvod
  painter – maliar
  painting – maľovanie
  performance – predstavenie
  performing art – divadelné, reprodukčné umenie
  poet – básník
  reason – dôvod, príčina
  ruler – vládka
  rural area – vidiecká oblasť
  science fiction – vedecko-fantastický (film)
  sculptor – sochár
  sculpture – sochárstvo
  soap opera – telenovela
  stone – kameň
  subtitles – titulky
3 SPORTS AND GAMES

Types of sports and games (typy športov a hier)
Popular sports and games in England, the USA and Slovakia
(obúdené športy a hry v Anglicku, USA a na Slovensku)
Asking questions (kladené otázky)
Interviewing a famous sportsman (rozhovor so znárnym športovcom)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. Give the names of some British sports.
2. What sports are you interested in?
3. Who is your favourite sportsman/sportswoman? Why?

There are indoor and outdoor sports. Gymnastics is a typical indoor sport. It can be practised all the year round in gyms. Athletics, cycling, hiking and most aquatic (water) sports, like sailing, regatta, water-skiing, diving, windsurfing and others are outdoor sports practised mainly during the summer. Swimming is also a typical summer sport. In winter it is possible to practise it in indoor pools. Sportsmen practise winter sports, such as skiing, skating, snow-boarding and tobogganing. Skiers can practise the giant slalom, downhill racing or ski jumps in ski resorts where there are good snow conditions. In Slovakia there are a lot of ski resorts in the High and Low Tatras.

Games are played by at least two players. The most popular games are football, rugby, hockey, tennis, golf, cricket, basketball, volleyball, badminton, squash and handball. The British are sport-loving people. The Cup Final is the most important football match of the year in England. It is played at the Wembley Stadium near London. The Slovaks are good at hockey. A lot of Slovak hockey players play in American and Canadian National Hockey League teams. Becoming a professional hockey player is one of the most frequent dreams of Slovak boys. Tennis, another popular game, is played on courts. The most famous tennis tournament is held at Wimbledon every year. The championships are watched by thousands of people all over the world. The most popular games in America are baseball, American football (called soccer), rugby, basketball, tennis, squash, boxing, wrestling and ice hockey. Squash is a game for two players played in a four-walled court with a special racket and a soft ball.

Most people do sports because it is good for their body and mind. Some sport activities, such as aerobics, jogging, swimming or body building are preferred by those who want to lose weight. Doing a sport is a good way of spending free time. Professional sports are often connected with overtraining or doping. During important competitions, such as the Olympic Games, sportsmen are tested and may...
easily be disqualified. This has a negative impact on their career. Success in professional sports is nowadays connected with money and popularity.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. Name three summer sports and three winter sports.
2. What is the difference between sports and games?
3. Which sports and games are popular in America?
4. Where does the best tennis championship of the world take place every year?
5. Name some negative phenomena of the professional sport.
6. Which sports and games are favourite in Slovakia?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** Which sports from the list below are individual sports and which are played in teams?

- triathlon
- tennis
- squash
- marathon
- running
- 100 metres
- rugby
- handball
- golf
- ice hockey
- cricket
- cross-country skiing
- basketball
- baseball
- badminton

**B** Which sports and games can be practised in these places?

1. on the ice rink  
2. on the courts  
3. in gymnasiums  
4. in indoor pools  
5. in ski resorts  
6. in a four-walled court

**C** Which sports and games are described below?

1. It is a racquet sport which is played by two players in a four-walled court with a small rubber ball.
2. It is a sport played on the ice rink by two teams of six players. They use long sticks to hit a puck to score goals.
3. It is a sport played by two teams of five active players who try to score points by shooting the ball through the basket from above.
4. It is a game played between two players or two teams of two players. Players use a racquet to strike the ball over a net into opponent’s court.

**D** Which are the qualities of a good sportsman/sportswoman? Choose from the list below and discuss them in class. Start like this:

Example: A good sportsman/sportswoman should be...

physically strong, healthy, competitive, fair, responsible, open, famous, clever, hard-working, representative, brave, modest, creative, selfish, successful, careful, ambitious, friendly

**E** Match the questions and answers from an interview by a sports reporter with a professional badminton player.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: Will you come to the tournament next year? <strong>c</strong></td>
<td>a) I train about four hours a day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Do you think that this tournament is well organised? ___</td>
<td>b) When I was a small boy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. When did you start playing badminton? ___</td>
<td>c) Hopefully, yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Why did you start playing badminton professionally? ___</td>
<td>d) Because I wanted to become the champion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How are you feeling before this tournament? ___</td>
<td>f) I will, I hope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Who will win today? ___</td>
<td>g) Yes, I think so.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Task 1

Look at the pictures below. Name the sports people are practising. Compare them and say:
- when people can practise these sports,
- where people can practise them,
- which of them is risky and why,
- which of them is more interesting for you and why.

Task 2

Talk about the qualities of professional sportsmen/sportswomen. Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of being a professional sportsman/sportswoman.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You are a sports journalist from the magazine called Sport. You want to write a short article about a well-known Slovak ice hockey player Jozef Stümpel. Make an interview with him and find out about the beginning of his career, teams he played for, biggest life success and his future plans.

Your partner: You are a well-known Slovak ice hockey player Jozef Stümpel. A sports journalist wants to write an article about you for the magazine called Sport. Answer his questions.
4 HOUSING

Living in a town and in the country (bývanie v meste a na vidieku)
Types of housing (rozdier druhov bývania)
Housing in Slovakia, Britain and the USA (bývanie na Slovensku, v Británii a v USA)
My dream house (pредставы o vlastnom bývaní)
Describing a house (opis domu)
Advantages and disadvantages (výhody a nevýhody)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. Where do you live?
2. What does home mean to you?
3. What is your idea of a perfect house?

Living in towns and cities has advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, there are many possibilities for jobs, education, sports and social life. There are many cultural events there, such as concerts, operas and theatre performances. People can visit cafés, pubs and night clubs. There are many shops, shopping malls and hospitals too. On the other hand, city inhabitants live in polluted, noisy, crowded and hectic places. There is often a lot of mess and dirt in the streets. Many city people live in housing estates, which is not an ideal place for children. There is also a high level of crime.

Many Slovaks live in flats. Some of them have cottages in the mountains where they like spending their weekends. The British prefer to live in houses. There are several types of houses in Britain, for example terraced houses which are built in a row, semi-detached houses that have one common wall, detached houses that stand by themselves and bungalows. Some Slovak houses are big enough for two families — grandparents, their children and grandchildren.

The furniture in British and Slovak rooms is not very different these days. The sitting room has a settee and armchairs, a wall unit and a hi-fi system, television and video, a bookcase and a coffee table. There is a carpet on the floor to make the room warm and comfortable. Most of the British houses have a fireplace because of cold weather. In the kitchen there are kitchen cupboards, a sink, a cooker, a fridge. There is also a table with chairs or stools. The floor in the kitchen is often tiled. Slovak families usually have their washing machine in the bathroom, the British in the kitchen. The bedroom has a double bed, built-in wardrobes, a dressing table with a mirror and a stool in front of the table.

In the USA, an average American family lives in a large house with many rooms. In large American cities, many people live in downtown apartments (flats). Like the British, Americans do not usually stay in the same house their whole lives. Some families like to move to other parts of the country and change houses every ten years.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What are the advantages of living in towns and cities?
2. What are the disadvantages of living in towns and cities?
3. What are basic types of houses in Britain?
4. What furniture is usually placed in a sitting room?
5. Where does the majority of American people live?
6. Do you like the idea of frequent moving from place to place?

PRACTICE TASKS

A  Put a tick (✓) to those things which you have in the place where you live. Circle those things which you would like to have once in your dream house. Talk about them.

garden swimming pool tennis court double garage sauna
fireplace office balcony wine cellar bath tiled floors
massage shower winter garden carpet cinema room bar
leather settee game room fitness hi-fi system

B  Look at the pictures of the houses below. How would you describe them? Start like this:

- In the picture, there is a/there are some...
- In the picture, I can see a (house/cottage).
- It is built/situated somewhere in (a city/countryside/near the beach/in the forest...).
- I think that it is (large, luxurious, expensive, cheap, new, old, beautiful...).
- The owner of this house is probably...
- Inside the house there are (how many rooms, what rooms, what furniture).
- Outside the house there is a (swimming pool, garden, park, fountain, lake, forest...).
- The most beautiful part of the house is (winter garden, balcony, wine cellar...).
- I like/don't like this house because...
SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 4  HOUSING

Task 1

Look at the pictures below and describe them. Say what types of houses you can see and what countries they are typical for. Talk about advantages and disadvantages of living in these houses.

Task 2

Talk about the place for living you are dreaming about. Say
- what type of flat/house it would be,
- where it would be situated,
- how you would furnish it,
- what colours would be dominant.

Task 3 Simulation

Your parents decided to sell their flat in a city because they want to buy a small, older house in a village. You are not very happy about it. Tell them about disadvantages connected with public transport, schooling possibilities, social life, cultural events, shops and health care in a village.
**VOCABULARY**

**HOUSING**

- **NOUNS**
  - advantage - výhoda
  - apartment - byt (amer. angl.)
  - armchair - kreslo
  - average - priemer, priemerný
  - bath - vana
  - beach - pláž
  - bookcase - knižnica (nábytok)
  - carpet - koberec
  - cellar - pivnica
  - central heating - ústredné kúrenie
  - cooker - sporák
  - cottage - chata
  - cupboards - priborník, kredenc, skrinka
  - detached house - samostatné stojaci dom
  - dirt - špina
  - disadvantage - nevýhoda
distance - vzdušnosť
double garage - dvojgaráž
dressing table - toaletný stolík
event - udalosť
fireplace - krb
floor - poschodie
forest - les
fountain - fontána
fridge - chladnička
furniture - nábytok
health care - zdravotná starostlivosť
housing estate - cintiak
inhabitant - obyvateľ
lake - jazer
leather - koža
level - úroveň
lift - výtah
location - poloha, miesto
mess - špina
mirror - zrkadlo
neighbour - sused
owner - majiteľ
performance - predstavenie
possibility - možnosť
public transport - verejná doprava
row - rad
safety entrance door - bezpečnostné vchodové dvere
schooling possibilities - možnosti vzdelávania
semi-detached house - dvojdom
settee - pohovka, diván
shower - sprcha
sink - vylieva
social life - spoločenský život
sport facilities - možnosti športového vyžitia
stool - stolička bez operadla
swimming pool - bazén
tennis court - tenisový kurz
view - výhľad
wall unit - nábytková stena
wardrobe - šatník
washing machine - práčka
wine cellar - vinna pivnica

- **ADJECTIVES**
  - basic - základný
  - built-in - zabudovaný
  - comfortable - pohodlný
  - common - spoločný
  - connected with - spojený s
  - crowded - preplnený
  - expensive - drahý
  - frequent - častejší
  - hectic - rušný
  - large - rozľahlý
  - luxurious - luxusný
  - noisy - hloučný
  - other - iný
  - polluted - znečistený
  - several - niekoľko, zopár
  - situated - umiestnený
  - terraced (house) - radový (dom)
  - tiled - vyliaždený
  - whole - celý

- **VERBS**
  - to furnish - zariadiť nábytkom
  - to move - prestavať sa
  - to place - umiestniť

**OTHER**

Inside the house, there is a there are some...
Vnútri v dome sa nachádza/jú...
Outside the house, there is a there are some...
Pri domu sa nachádza/jú...
The most beautiful part of the house is...
Najkrajšou časťou domu je...
I like / don't like this house because...
Páči sa mi / nepáči sa mi tento dom, pretože...

**Advantages and disadvantages** - výhody a nevýhody
It has many / some advantages. Má to veľa / niekoľko výhod.
The first advantage/disadvantage is...
Prvou výhodou/nevýhodou je...
Another advantage/disadvantage is...
Ďalšou výhodou/nevýhodou je...
The biggest advantage/disadvantage is...
Najväčšou výhodou/nevýhodou je...
5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES

Shopping possibilities (možnosti nakupovania)
Shopping centres versus small specialised shops (obchodné centrá versus malé specializované obchody)
Services – post, bank (služby – pošta, banka)
Complaining and apologising (stažnosť a ospravedlnenie sa)
Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)

1. Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
   1. Do you like shopping?
   2. Where do you normally buy food, clothes or shoes?
   3. What kinds of services do you use most often?

Shopping is an activity people love or hate. Nowadays, people can do shopping in huge shopping centres or in small specialised shops.

A shopping mall is a large indoor shopping centre with different types of shops, cinemas, wellness centres and bowling centres. They also have cafes, snack bars, restaurants where people can relax after doing shopping. They are open late in the evening and on weekends. Department stores sell their customers all kinds of foods, clothes, shoes, toys, sporting goods, cosmetics, books and furniture all under one roof. Many Slovaks do their shopping in hypermarkets, such as Carrefour or Tesco.

There are still some small specialised shops which save your time, energy and money too. Corner shops sell different foodstuffs (tea, coffee, bottled beer, juice, sweets, vegetables, fruit) and dairy products (milk, butter, cream, cheese and yoghurt). They also sell newspapers and magazines. Various kinds of fresh bread, rolls, buns and cakes can be bought at the baker’s. Butcher’s sell fresh, canned or frozen meat and meat products (salami, ham, sausages). Fresh vegetables and all kinds of fruit can be bought at the greengrocer’s. Many people prefer shopping at the market where there is a wide choice of potatoes, cabbage, beans, carrots, tomatoes, apples, pears, oranges or bananas. The chemist’s is a specialised shop where people can buy medicines but also cosmetics. Boutiques sell different dresses, shirts, skirts, blouses, pullovers, jeans and so on. Shoes, belts and bags are sold in shoe shops.

In everyday life, people also need different kinds of services performed by hairdressers, car-mechanics, garden designers, plumbers, lawyers, real estate agents or doctors. Almost everybody uses postal services. The post distributes letters, postcards, telegrams and parcels to the recipients. If the post cannot deliver a letter or parcel for some reason, it is sent back to the sender. We can also use postal services to send money. In the past, people sent many letters and postcards by post. Nowadays, they send e-mail letters, e-mail postcards or text messages. Banks provide financial services to the people. We can pay cash or by bank card. In Slovakia it is not usual to pay by cheque. Most people have a current account in a bank. Their earnings regularly come to their account. When they need cash, they withdraw money from the account through a cash machine, using a bank card. If we need to borrow money, the bank can give us a loan. If the bank lends us money for building a house, the money is called a mortgage.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What are shopping malls?
2. What can you buy at the grocer’s/baker’s/butcher’s/greengrocer’s/chemist’s?
3. What kinds of services does the post office provide?
4. How can we pay for goods or services?
5. What can you do with a bank card?
6. What is the “mortgage”?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Which specialised shops sell the following goods?

Example: flour, oil, eggs, sweets, coffee, yoghurt
corner shop
1. cakes, buns, rolls, bread
2. sausages, ham, salami, chicken
3. beans, melons, apples, tomatoes, cabbage
4. body lotion, soap, shampoo, aspirin
5. dresses, skirts, blouses, jeans, shirts

B Who says the following lines? A shop assistant (SA) or a customer (C)?

Example: Good morning, madam. How may I help you?
1. I would like to buy a nice jumper for myself.
2. That will be £22.50, please.
3. Oh, I don’t know. I think I take M size.
4. Sorry, but we only have those in small sizes.
5. What size are you?
6. Okay, I’ll take it.
7. Where may I try it on?
8. And here is your change, four pounds, one penny.
9. Oh, it's a bit small. Do you have it in bigger size?
10. Does it fit?
11. How much is it?
12. Thank you for your shopping. Goodbye.

**Complain about the quality of the jumper which you bought in the department store last week. It lost shape and colour after the first washing. You want your money back. What would you say as a customer? How would you react as a shop assistant? Finish the sentences below.**

**Customer:**
I would like to complain about...
I am not happy with...
I was very disappointed when I...

**Shop assistant:**
I am very sorry that you were...
Of course, we will give you...
I am afraid that I cannot...

**Task 2**

**Task 3 Role-play**

**You:** You bought an expensive T-shirt in the department store last week. When you came home, you found big spots on it. You are very disappointed about its quality. Go to the department store and complain about it. You want your money back.

**Your partner:** You are a shop assistant in a department store. Your customer came to complain about the quality of the T-shirt which he/she bought last week. Apologise to the customer and suggest some compensation. You cannot give him/her money back.
**VOCABULARY**  
**SHOPPING AND SERVICES**

**NOUNS**
- baker's - pekárstvo
- bank card - banková platobná karta
- bean - fazuľa
- body lotion - telové mlieko
- bun - buchta, bráška
- butcher's - mäsíarsťovo
- cabbage - kapusta
- car-mechanic - automekanik
- cash machine - bankomat
- chemist's - lekáreň, drogéria
- clothes - oblečenie
- consumer society - konzumná spoločnosť
- corner shop - malý obchod (na rohu)
- cream - smotana
- current account - bežný účet
- customer - zákazník
- dairy products - mliečne výrobky
- department store - obchodný dom
- dress - šaty
- earnings - úspory
- flour - múka
- foodstuffs - potraviny
- furniture - nábytok
- greengrocer's - obchod so zeleninou a ovocím
- hairdresser - kaderník/-čka
- lawyer - právnik
- loan - požička
- market - trh
- medicine - liek
- mortgage - hypotéka
- parcel - balíček
- pear - hruška
- plumber - Udřžbár
- real estate agent - obchodník s nehnuteľnosťami
- recipient - prijímateľ
- roll - rohlík
- roof - strecha
- sale - výpredaj
- sausage - párek, klobása

**ADJECTIVES**
- canned - v konzerve
- disappointed - sklamený
- financial - finančný
- fresh - čerstvý
- frozen - zamrznutý
- huge - obrovský
- personal - osobný
- specialised - specializovaný

**VERBS**
- to borrow money (from) - požičať si peniaze (od)
- to close down - zatvorite
- to compete with - súťažiť s
- to deliver - doviesť
- to distribute - rozposielat
- to do shopping - nakupovať
- to lend - požičať
- to pay by bank card - platiť bankovou platobnou kartou
- to pay by cheque - platiť šekom
- to pay (in) cash - platiť v hotovosti
- to provide services - poskytovať služby
- to save (time) - štartovať čas
- to sell - predávať
- to use - použiť
- to withdraw money (from) - vybrať si peniaze (z)

**OTHER**
- a wide choice of - široký výber (čoho)
- on the other hand - na druhej strane (pri porovnávaní)
- pros and cons - za a proti
- various kinds of - rôzne druhy (čoho)

**PHRASES**
- Shop assistant - predavač/-ka
- How may I help you? Ako vám môžem pomôcť?
- What size are you? Akú nosite velkosť?
- Does it fit? Je vám to dobré?
- Thank you for your shopping. Dakujeme, že ste u nás nakupovali.
- Customer - zákazník/-čka
- I would like to buy... Chcel/-a by som si kupiť...
- Where may I try it on? Kde si to môžem vyskúšať?
6 HEALTH CARE

Human body (ludspé telo)
At the doctor’s (u lekária)
How to keep fit (ako zostaa zdavý)
Diseases (choroby)
Expressing sympathy (vyjadrenie súcitu)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. What do you do to stay healthy?
2. When do you go to see a doctor?
3. What are the most dangerous diseases?

More and more people know that good health means a longer and happier life. Nowadays, people care about their health more than they did in the past. They eat healthier food, practise different kinds of sports and try to avoid stressful situations. A healthy, strong and beautiful body is an ideal for many people. Being in a good shape and good mental health are the basic conditions for good life. Doctors often say that headaches and stomachaches are the results of depression. Bad eating habits, lack of physical activities and stress are negative factors which cause serious diseases.

When we are ill, we usually see a doctor (general practitioner). Sometimes, we need to have an appointment with a specialist. The doctor examines our body, asks about the symptoms and usually prescribes some medication on a prescription. Then, we go to the pharmacy to get our antibiotics, painkillers or vitamins. When the illness is too serious, the patient is taken to the hospital to be operated. Basic health care is free in Slovakia for all people who pay their insurance monthly.

Everybody goes through various diseases during their childhood and adult life. Most of the diseases are not serious and do not take a long time to cure. In the past, diseases, such as flu, tuberculosis or scarlet fever, killed many people. Nowadays, there exist vaccines against most of them. There are diseases which we have problems to cure or cannot cure at all yet. Cancer is one of them. More than 3.6 million people are infected with AIDS. Many countries in the world spend a lot of money on public campaigns and advertisements which warn of the dangers. Publicity advises heterosexuals to use a condom and have one sexual partner only.
C Who says the following lines? A doctor (D) or a patient (P)?

Example: The pain started last night.  
P
1. What's the matter with you?  
P
2. I've got a terrible cough.  
P
3. Where does it hurt?  
P
4. Let me examine you.  
P
5. Do I need to see a specialist too?  
P
6. I took an aspirin last night.  
P
7. Have you got a temperature?  
P
8. I can't move my leg at all.  
P
9. Don't worry, it's not very serious.  
P
10. You must stay in bed for two weeks.  
P
11. I will prescribe you some medicine.  
P
12. I took the temperature and it was high.  
P
13. The nurse will give you an injection.  
P

D Express sympathy to your friend who complains about his health troubles. Use the following sentences:

Expressing sympathy:
I'm sorry to hear that.
I hope it's not serious.
How bad!

Example:
How are you feeling?
I feel sick.
I'm sorry to hear that.

1. I've got a terrible headache.
2. I think I have a temperature.
3. It hurts when I press it here.
4. I broke my leg.
5. I will be operated tomorrow.

Task 1
See useful phrases on page 196
Look at the pictures below. Compare and contrast the lifestyles of these two young people. Talk about how they care about their health. What do you do to stay fit and healthy? Say which lifestyle you prefer and why.

Task 2
Talk about
- the most dangerous diseases,
- the most frequent diseases among young people,
- how you feel when you have flu and what you do,
- what your doctor does and says when you go to see him/her.

Task 3 Role-play
You: You have just returned home from your summer holidays which you spent in Egypt. You are not feeling well because you ate some strange food there. Complain to your partner about your health troubles and describe all symptoms you have.

Your partner: Your friend has just returned home from his summer holidays which he/she spent in Egypt. He/She feels sick. Ask what troubles him/her. Express sympathy and give him/her some advice what to do to feel better.
You must stay in bed. Musíte ležet.
I will prescribe you some medicine. Předpíšem vám nejaké lieky.
The nurse will give you an injection. Sestřička vám dá injekciu.

Patient - pacient/-ka
I've got a cough/backache/pain... Mám kašel/boli/mám chřipku/mám bolest v...
Do I need to see a specialist too? Musím týž na odborné vyšetření?

I took an aspirin. Užil/a som aspirín.
I can't move my leg at all. Vôbec nemôžem hýbať nohou.
I took the temperature and it was high. Zmeral/a som teplotu a bola vysoká.

Expressing sympathy - prejavšte súcit
I'm sorry to hear that. Je mi to líto.
I hope it's not serious. Dúfam, že to nie je vážne.
How bad! To je zlé!
7 TRAVELLING

Getting ready for a journey (príprava na cestu)
Means of transport (dopravné prostriedky)
Orientation in town (orientácia v meste)
Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)
Asking and giving directions (pytanie sa na cestu a udanie smere)

1. Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
   1. How do you usually travel to school?
   2. Do you have a driving licence?
   3. What do you always take with you when you travel for holidays?

People travel to work, to school, on business or for pleasure. When people travel abroad for holidays, they often address travel agencies to arrange travel, accommodation, insurance and a travel guide. Slovaks do not need passports anymore to travel to the EU countries. They only need their identification cards. Last minute or first moment offers are very popular.

Airports, railway stations, seaports, and bus stops are always full of people travelling for long or short distances. Travelling by air is exciting, fast, comfortable, relatively safe but expensive. Passengers need their flight tickets and passports. People and their luggage is checked when they go through the customs. During the flight, passengers are offered some meals, refreshments and drinks by stewards and stewardesses.

People commute by trains to work or school. They are cheap, less polluting and safe but not very clean and comfortable. Slow trains stop at every station. Fast trains and intercity trains are more comfortable for longer distances. They do not stop at every station. Trains on longer journeys often have a sleeping car and a dining car.

Coaches are buses for long-distance travel. They are fast and comfortable and not very expensive. In our country many people prefer coaches to trains. During the holidays, travel agencies offer many coach trips to mountain or seaside resorts. When travelling by coach to London, passengers can have an interesting experience of crossing the English Channel by ferry.

Cars are comfortable and quick; they are not safe, they pollute the environment and are expensive. It is interesting that the number of cars, drivers and highways is higher every year. In Slovakia the age limit for a driving licence is eighteen. Careful driving, respecting speed limits and strict alcohol tests reduce traffic accidents.

Many people like travelling by bike. Some go to school by bike; others prefer cycling as a sport or a hobby. Many people go on a cycling holiday. Cycling is healthy and exciting.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. Why do people travel?
2. What do travel agencies arrange?
3. What is the most suitable way of travelling for long distances?
4. What happens at the airport before passengers get on the plane?
5. What are the advantages/disadvantages of travelling by train?
6. Which of the ways of travelling is the most dangerous?

☐ PRACTICE TASKS

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: bike-road

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>car</th>
<th>ship</th>
<th>plane</th>
<th>train</th>
<th>coach</th>
<th>airport</th>
<th>bus station</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>railway station</td>
<td>seaport</td>
<td>highway</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B What are the opposites of the following adjectives? Find the pairs.

Example: exciting – boring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expensive</th>
<th>boring</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>polluted</th>
<th>slow</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>exciting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C What are the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives above?

Example: exciting – more exciting – the most exciting

| fast | – faster | the fastest |

D How would you travel to the following destinations? By car/coach/ship/train/plane? Explain your preference.

Example: To Croatia, I would certainly travel by car because I find it the fastest and the most interesting way. There is also a new highway up to Makarska.
E Your friend and you are going to travel to England to do some summer jobs. Your friend wants to travel by coach. Persuade him/her to travel by plane. Use the phrases below.

I prefer travelling by... because...
I think we should travel by...
I’d like to travel by... because I find it...

We’d rather travel by...
Travelling by... would be (more/less expensive, slower) than travelling by...

F What do you usually pack when you travel to the mountains? Choose only 5 items from the list below which you think are very important to you. Compare them with your classmates. Explain the reasons of your choice.

comb  sneakers  raincoat  jeans  camera  passport  toothbrush  slippers  pyjamas  socks  towel  soap  notebook  torch  sleeping bag  knife  chewing gums  sunglasses  bottle of water  mobile phone  CDs  lighter

G Orientation in town. Translate the following sentences to Slovak.

Excuse me, how do I get to...?
Go straight.
Go along the road as far as...
How far is it?
Go to the end of the street.
Turn right/t urn left...
It’s near/next to/opposite/between...
You can’t miss it.
It’s not far.
It’s about 10 minutes’ walk.
It’s five stops from here.
Take the bus.

H SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 7 TRAVELLING

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 196

Look at the pictures below. Describe the means of transport which you can see. Talk about advantages and disadvantages of using them. Talk about possible reasons why people travel this way and discuss the possible destinations.

A

B

Task 2

Talk about your travelling experience. Talk about
- your favourite country you have been to,
- the reasons of your journey,
- how you travelled there,
- where you stayed,
- who you travelled with.

Name five things which you always pack when you travel abroad.
Task 3: Simulation

You have invited some friends to a party in your new flat, but they don’t know where to go. Give them clear instructions for how to walk there from the station. See the map.

Your notes:

\[ \text{STATION} \]
\[ \text{STATION ROAD} \]
\[ \text{TRAFFIC LIGHTS} \]
\[ \text{TEXCO} \]
\[ \text{PARSON ROAD} \]
\[ \text{FOREST SCHOOL} \]
\[ \text{ST. MARY’S CHURCH} \]

\[ \text{VOCABULARY TRAVELLING} \]

■ NOUNS

accommodation – ubytovanie
advantage – výhoda
airport – letisko
camera – fotoaparát
chewing gum – žúvačka
couch – diaľkový autobus
comb (štúk, koum) – hreben

cottage – chata
country – vidiek
customs – colnica
cycling – bicyklovanie
destination – destinácia, cieľ cesty
dining car – jedálenský vagón
disadvantage – nevýhoda
distance – vzdialenosť
driving licence – vodičský preukaz
the English Channel – Lamanšky prieliv
environment – životné prostredie
experience – skúsenosť, zážitok
ferry – trajekt
flight – let
flight ticket – letenka
forest – les
guide – sprievodca
highway – diaľnica
identification (Identity) card – občiansky preukaz
insurance – poistenie
intercity train – medzimestský vlak
item – predmet, vec
journey – cesta
knife – nôž
lighter – zapalovač
luggage – batožina
means of transport – dopravný prostriedok
mountain resort – horské stredisko
notebook – poznámkový blok
offer – ponuka
passenger – cestujúci
passport – cestovný pas
plane – lietadlo
preference – preferencia (uprednostnenie niečoho)

railway station – železničná stanica
raincoat – prišplášť
refreshment – občerstvenie
seaport – prístav
seaside resort – pôrodný stredisko
ship – loď
sleeping bag – spacák
sleeping car – spací vagón
slippers – papuče
sneakers – tenisky
soap – mydlo
socks – ponožky
speed limit – najvyššia povolená rýchlosť
steward – steward
stewardess – letuška
sunglasses – slnečné okuliare
tent – stan
toothbrush – zubné kefka
torch – baterka
towel – uterák
traffic accident – dopravná nehoda
travel agency – cestovná kancelária

Croatia – Chorvátsko
Greece – Grécko
Spain – Španielsko
Thailand – Thajsko

■ ADJECTIVES

boring – nudný
cheap – lačný
clean – čistý
clear – zrozumiteľný
comfortable – pohodlný
dangerous – nebezpečný
exciting – vzrušujúci
expensive – drahý (o cene)
fast – rýchly
favourite – oblúbený
polluted – znečistený
polluting – znečistujúci
quick – rýchly
safe – bezpečný
slow – pomaly
suitable – vhodný
8 EDUCATION

- Expressing preference – vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme
  I prefer... Dávam prednosť...
  We’d rather travel by... Radšie cestujeme (čím)...
  I find it the fastest and the most interesting way. Považujem to za najrýchlejší a najzaujímavejší spôsob.
  I think we should... Myslím, že by sme mali...

- Asking and giving directions – pitanie sa na cestu a udanie smeru
  Excuse me, where is...? Prepáčte, kde je...? Go straight. Chodíte rovnor
  Go along the road as far as... Chodte až po...
  Turn right/left. Zobčte vpravo/vľavo.
  How far is it? Aké je to daleko?
  You can’t miss it. Iste to nemôžete.
  It’s not far. Nie je to daleko.
  It’s about 10 minutes’ walk. Je to asi 10 minúť pešo.
  Take the bus. Chodíte autobusom.
  It’s five stops from here. Je to päť autobusových zastávok odhliad.

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. How long is compulsory school attendance in Slovakia?
2. What is the difference between high school and university?
3. What school do you attend? Which year are you in?

Good education is very important for a successful life. In Slovakia school attendance is compulsory from the age of 6 to 16. After nursery schools and kindergartens, children start to attend an elementary school at the age of 6. When they are 16, they can decide to leave the school with an elementary qualification or to continue to a secondary school. Pupils usually have to pass entrance exams to continue their studies at secondary schools. The best students apply for study at a grammar school (or high school) called gymnázium, which prepares for university study. There are different types of secondary schools which usually take 4 years; the most popular are secondary business schools, technical schools and medical schools. Vocational schools and their training centres prepare students for different kinds of professions. The study lasts either 3 years and it ends with achieving a skill certificate or 5 years which ends with a school-leaving exam called maturita. Some subjects are compulsory, others are elective. Students at vocational schools must take a theoretical and practical exam from their specialised subjects too. After finishing study at secondary schools, students can get a job or apply to study at university. In most cases, they have to take an entrance exam to get in. A study at university takes 5 or 6 years and finishes with graduation where graduates are given diplomas to their majors.

Students’ schedule and school subjects differ from school to school. Vocational school students must also take some practical lessons outside their schools, called the practice. A school year in Slovakia starts the first week of September and finishes the last week of June. In between, there are a few days off (for example the All Saint’s Day, Easter or the May days). There are winter holidays, which last about two weeks and spring holidays, which last one week. The summer holidays are the longest and last two months.
Extracurricular activities are very popular in the afternoons. There are many different clubs and sports teams at schools which meet after the classes. Many schools publish their own student newspapers and some have their own radio stations. Most schools in Slovakia have their own gym, school canteen and sometimes a swimming pool, school playground and language schools.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. How long is compulsory education in Slovakia?
2. What kinds of secondary schools are in your town?
3. What can students do after finishing study at secondary school?
4. How is the school year organised in Slovakia?
5. What subjects are compulsory and elective at your school?
6. What extracurricular activities does your school offer?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** Put a tick to those subjects which you have at your school.

Slovak mathematics history biology chemistry physics civics physical training English German French Russian Italian computers arts technical drawing woodwork metalwork

**B** What other subjects do you have at your school which are not on the list above?

**C** Make the pairs from the following words. There are more possible combinations. x-8

Example: school attendance, school subjects

secondary training school compulsory attendance entrance subjects exam extracurricular sport activities teams centres

**D** Express your opinion. What are the qualities of a good teacher? What are the qualities of a good student? Talk about them and use the adjectives in the box below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a good teacher</th>
<th>a good student</th>
<th>should/shouldn't be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strict</td>
<td>fair</td>
<td>responsible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolerant</td>
<td>liberal</td>
<td>informed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsible</td>
<td>liberal</td>
<td>interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authoritative</td>
<td>creative</td>
<td>clever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>friendly hard-working</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E** Now agree or disagree with the following statements. Use these sentences to develop discussion about them.

1. Good education is important for successful life.
2. There should be no tests and exams at schools.

To agree:
I agree.
Exactly. Absolutely.
That’s true.

To disagree:
Yes, but...
I’m not sure.
I don’t think so.

**F** Give a short presentation about your school to the 9th graders from elementary schools. Finish the following sentences.

OPEN THE PRESENTATION: Dear pupils, welcome to our school. My name is (your name) and I will tell you something about studying at (name of your school).

GIVE THE PRESENTATION: In our school, there are about (number of students). We all study here to become (your future job). We learn different subjects here. The most favourite subjects are (say which ones). The least favourite subjects are (say which ones) because they are (say why). The teachers at our school are (describe them). The students are (describe them). There are more (boys/girls) here which is (good/bad) because (say why). (Say how often), we have practical lessons where we practice our skills for future jobs. We often go to (say where) to do our practice. In the afternoons we often meet (say where) where we (say what you do there).

CLOSE THE PRESENTATION: At the end I can say that I like studying at our school. There’s a lot of fun. Thank you for your attention. Now, I can answer your questions.
**Task 2**

Talk about the following statements. Express your agreement or disagreement. Give clear arguments.

1. Students should not be given any homework.
2. Summer holidays should last three months.

**Task 3 - Simulation**

You are the director of your school. Give a short presentation about it to the 9th graders from elementary schools and their parents. First describe the school and the type of study. Then talk about the school subjects and extracurricular activities at your school. Say what kind of jobs your ex-students have.

**VOCABULARY - EDUCATION**

- **Nouns**
  - agreement – súhlas
  - arts – výtvarná výchova; umenie
  - authority – autorita
  - civics – náuka o spoločnosti
  - day off – volný deň
  - diploma – diplom
  - director – riaditeľ
  - disagreement – nesúhlas
  - education – vzdelenie
  - elementary school – základná škola
  - entrance exam – pohovor, prijímacie skúšky
  - ex-student – bývalý študent
  - graduate – absolvent
  - graduation – promócia
  - grammar school – gymnázium
  - gym (gymnasium) – telocvičňa
  - high school – typ strednej školy
  - kindergarten – materská škôlka
  - language school – jazyková škola
  - major – hlavný študijný odbor
  - metalwork – obrábanie kovu
  - nursery school – jasle
  - physical training – telesná výchova
  - playground – ihrisko
  - practice – prax
  - pupil – žiak základnej školy
  - qualification – kvalifikácia
  - quality – kvalita, vlastnosť
  - reason – dôvod
  - rule – pravidlo
  - schedule – rozvrh
  - school attendance – školská dochádzka
  - school canteen – školská jedáleň
  - school-leaving exam – maturita
  - secondary school – stredná škola
  - skill – zručnosť
  - skill certificate – výučný list
  - subject – predmet
  - swimming pool – bazén
  - technical drawing – technické kreslenie
  - vocational school – odborná škola/úč-ňovská škola
  - woodwork – obrábanie dreva

- **Adjectives**
  - clever – býstrý
  - compulsory – povinný
  - easy-going – bezstarostný, láskomyslný
  - elective – voliteľný
  - extracurricular – mimoškolský
  - fair – spravodlivý
  - favourite – oblúbený
  - flexible – prispôsobivý
  - hard working – pracovitý
9 JOBS

Choice of job and motivation (volba povolania a motivácia)
Curriculum vitae (životopis)
Getting ready for my future job (príprava na moje budúce povolanie)
Job interview – questions and answers (pohovor pri uchádzači sa o prácu – otázky a odpovede)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. What kinds of professions, do you think, are the most interesting ones?
2. What does a “good job” mean to you?
3. What kind of job would you never like to do?

Employment is a contract between an employer and an employee. The employer is a person (or an institution) who hires employees. People who have their own business are self-employed. The unemployed are people who lost their job, quit or were fired. They live on the dole and are on a list in job centres, which help them find a new job.

When people search for a new job, they look at several factors, such as type of work, possible promotion and career development, salary, working time, travel opportunities, place of work and others. The available positions are published in the newspapers or on the Internet. The candidates send the job application and their CV (curriculum vitae) together with a letter of motivation. Their CV should include personal data and details about education, skills and work experience. The best candidates are invited to an oral interview. At the interview, they usually answer questions, describe their motivations and expectations. Candidates should prepare well for the interview, find information about the organisation or the company, answer clearly and stay calm. Successful candidates are offered a job with a starting salary, position, medical benefits and vacation days.

People have full-time jobs and part-time jobs. Doctors, nurses, truck drivers work in shifts. Manual workers work in manufacturing or construct buildings. Teachers, scientists, doctors, lawyers, artists work intellectually. Nowadays, more and more professions require communication and organisation skills. Professions like policeman, pilot, construction worker are very dangerous professions because there is a high risk of an injury or an accident.

The labour market in Slovakia changed in the last ten years. Many work opportunities were created thanks to foreign investors who came to our country to set up their companies here. Young people with good reference and experience are preferred to fresh graduates and older people.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What is employment?
2. How can people become unemployed?
3. What things do people consider when they search for a new job?
4. What information should be included in a professional CV?
5. What happens at the job interview?
6. What does it mean to work full-time, part-time and in shifts?

☐ PRACTICE TASKS

A Which jobs are described below? Who...?

1. catches criminals 5. makes facial massage 9. takes photographs
2. fixes taps 6. sells meat 10. brings letters
3. makes dress 7. writes in newspapers 11. works in a library
4. cuts women's hair 8. makes bread 12. repairs cars

B Which jobs described above are manual and which are intellectual? Which of them do you find the most interesting, the least interesting, the most dangerous, the most paid and the least paid?

- Manual jobs are:

- Intellectual jobs are:

- The most interesting job is:
- The least interesting job is:
- The most dangerous job is:
- The most paid job is:
- The least paid job is:

C What qualities and skills are needed to do these jobs? Choose from the list.

flexibility creativity physical strength communication skills patience organisation skills speaking foreign language good social behaviour responsibility decision-making problem solving good imagination feeling for beauty reliability writing skills good memory

D Fill in this form of curriculum vitae with your own data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal Details</th>
<th>Name:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Birth:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nationality:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Education                  | (year 200... - now) Secondary School, (place )
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>school-leaving exam in English,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skills and Competences</td>
<td>computer skills, English (intermediate)...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
At the interview. Match the interviewer's questions with candidate's answers. Then say what job is offered.

Example: Do you speak any foreign languages? Yes, I do. I speak English and French.

Interviewer's questions:
1. Why are you interested in this job?
2. What are your expectations?
3. What is your experience in this field?
4. Why did you quit your previous job?
5. What school did you graduate from?
6. Do you have any reference?
7. What are your qualities?
8. What are your weaknesses?
9. Would you like to ask anything?
10. What do you know about our company?

Candidate's answers:
a) I have worked for a car company for 5 years.
b) I would like to ask you about working in shifts.
c) I am responsible and hard-working.
d) It looks very creative to me.
e) Possible promotion and travel opportunities.
f) I graduated from a secondary technical school.
g) I drink too much coffee when I work.
h) You are a French company producing cars.
i) I had to work at weekends too.
j) Yes, of course. It is from my previous director.

Which factors from the list below will you consider when you search for a job in the future? Underline them and discuss their importance in pairs or small groups.

- full-time job/part-time job/working in shifts
- manual work/intellectual work
- self-employed/employee
- working alone/in a small team/in a big team
- working inside/outside/travelling for business
- medical benefits
- vacation days
- career development (possible promotion)
- good starting salary

See useful phrases on page 196

Task 1

Look at the pictures below. Describe what jobs these people have. Say which jobs are intellectual and manual. Talk about which qualities and skills are needed for each of them.
**Task 2**

Talk about your preparation for your future job. Talk about:
- what school you are attending,
- what jobs you can do after finishing your studies at school,
- what skills and competences you need for that job,
- the quality of practice you have at your school (its length, place, trainers).

**Task 3 Role-play**

You: You are a fresh graduate from a secondary vocational school. You have no working experience. You have found an interesting job offer working as a secretary in a foreign financial company. You applied for it and now you are at the interview. You really want the job. You think that you have all the qualities and skills for it. Persuade the interviewer that you are the best candidate.

Your partner: You are a director in a foreign financial company. You need a good and experienced secretary. You are interviewing a fresh graduate who is interested in the job. You are not sure about his/her qualities and skills. Decide if he/she is the best candidate for the available position.

**Vocabulary: Jobs**

**Nouns**
- application – prihlaska
- career – kariéra
- competence – spсобnosť
- construction worker – stavbár
- creativity – tvorivosť
- CV (curriculum vitae) – životopis
- data – údaje
- decision-making – rozhodovanie sa
- development – rast, rozvoj
- director – riaditeľ
- employee – zaměstnanec
- employer – zaměstnavatel
- employment – zaměstnání
- expectation – očakávanie
- experience – skúsenosť
- facial massage – masáz tváre
- flexibility – prípravosť, flexibilita
- foreign investor – zahraničný investor
- fresh graduate – čerstvý absolvent
- full-time (job) – (práca) na plný pracovný pomer
- injury – zranenie
- interview – pohovor
- job centre – úrad práce
- labour market – trh práce
- lawyer – právník
- length – dĺžka
- list – zoznam
- manufacturing – výroba
- medical benefit – nemocenská dávka
- opportunity – príležitosť
- part-time job – práca na čiastočný pracovný pomer
- patience – trpzelivosť
- physical strength – fyzická síla
- place – miesto
- position – pozícia, pracovné miesto
- preparation – priprava
- problem solving – riešenie problémov
- promotion – povýšenie
- reference – odporúčenie
- reliability – spoľahlivosť
- salary – plat
- sales manager – obchodný zástupca
- scientist – vedecký
- skill – zručnosť
- social behaviour – spoločenské správani
- starting salary – nástupný plat
- vacation day – volný deň
- weakness – slabá stránka
- writing skill – zručnosť v písaní

**Adjectives**
- available – volný, dostupný
- calm – pokojný, klidný
- dangerous – nebezpečný
- foreign – zahraničný
- hard-working – pracovitý
- manual – manuálny
- oral – ústny
- paid – platnený
- personal – osobný
- previous – predchádzajúci
- responsible – zodpovedný
- self-employed – na volnej nohe, životnosť
- successful – úspešný
- unemployed – nezamestnaný

**Verbs**
- to apply for – uchádzať sa o
- to attend (school) – navštíviť (školu)
- to be fired – byť prepustený zo zamestnania
- to be in danger – byť v nebezpečenstve
- to be interested in – zaujať sa o
- to consider – zvažovať
- to construct – stavovať
- to create – vytvoriť
- to cut hair – strihať vlasy
- to describe – opisovať
- to find something interesting – považovať niečo za zaujímavé
- to fix taps – opravovať vodovodné košíčky
- to graduate (from) – vyškoliť sa, promovať (kde)
- to hire – robiť nábor, najť si niekoho
- to include – zahráť
- to invite – pozvať
- to live on the dole – žiť na podpore
- to lose – strata
- to make dress – šiť šaty
- to match – spojiť
- to offer – ponúkniť
- to persuade – presvedčiť
- to quit – dať vypoved
- to require – vyžadovať, požadať
- to search for – pátrať po
- to set up (a company) – založiť (firmu)
- to take photographs – fotografovať
- to work in shifts – pracovať na smeny

**Other**
- clearly – zrozumiteľne
- other – iný
- pros and cons – za a proti
- such as – ako napríklad
- the least (+ adjective) – najmenej (+ príd. meno)
- the most (+ adjective) – najviac + príd. meno
10 PEOPLE AND NATURE

Seasons and weather (ročné obdobia a počasie)
Nature around us – fauna and flora (príroda okolo nás – fauna a flóra)
Trip to the country (vylet na vidiek)
Talking about weather (rozhovor o počasí)
Prohibitions (vyjadrenie zákazu)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. Why do people go to forests?
2. What do you know about the activities of environmentalists?
3. Which natural disaster, do you think, is the most dangerous?

Slovakia has a continental climate with four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter. The weather in spring and autumn is alike: light showers, cloudy days and sunny intervals are typical. Winters are normally cold and snowy. Summers are hot, with many sunny days and a few summer storms.

The climate of a region determines what plants grow and what animals live in that region. Plants are an important part in the cycle of nature. There would be no life on Earth without them. Animals depend directly or indirectly on plants because they cannot make their own food. Plants also produce the oxygen we breathe. According to the scientists, there are about 260,000 species of plants and about 9 or 10 million species of animals. Nowadays, the existence of some plants and animals is in danger. For example, elephants, tigers, pandas, whales, great apes, marine turtles, polar bears, rhinos, snow leopards and dolphins are at the top of the Red List of Threatened Species. In Slovakia, bisons, wolves, foxes, eagles are also in danger.

The most serious ecological problems of today are the pollution of air, water and soil, destruction of ecosystems, disappearance of many species of animals and plants, changes in weather, acid rain, global warming, destruction of tropical rain forests and destruction of the ozone layer. Most of this damage, which proceeds faster and faster, has not been caused by natural catastrophes but by man himself. Technical progress, which enables us to live a more comfortable life, leads to the degradation of quality of environment we live in.

Professional organisations, environmentalists, ecologists, biologists, volunteers or just nature lovers do their best to protect nature and save life on Earth. We all can contribute to this by respecting the laws of nature. In forests, it is not allowed to make noise, set fire, cut wood, drop litter, poison air and lakes with chemicals and so on. People can be fined or even imprisoned for breaking the laws.
D  Say what people are not allowed to do in the forests and what is prohibited.

Example: People must not shout in the forests.
People must not...
People are not allowed to...
It is prohibited/forbidden to...
It is not allowed to/permitted to...
1. to shout
2. to catch animals
3. to damage forest land
4. to set fire
5. to hunt animals
6. to drop the litter
7. to trespass
8. to use chemicals near water
9. to fish in a forest
10. to cut wood
11. to feed animals with poisoned food
12. to damage plants

E  Describe what happens when the following natural disasters hit. Which of them cause the biggest damage?

earthquakes  fire  droughts  volcanoes  tornadoes
hurricanes  floods  tsunamis  waves

 SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 10  PEOPLE AND NATURE

Task 1  See useful phrases on page 196

Look at the pictures below. Talk about the relationship between the people and animals in the pictures. Compare the living conditions of both animals.

Task 2

Talk about the kind of weather which you like most and which you hate most. Say what you usually do then, what you wear and how you feel.

Task 3  Role-play

You: It's Saturday morning and it's raining. Call your boyfriend/girlfriend to persuade him/her to go to the forest with your father and you to hunt rabbits.

Your partner: It's Saturday morning and it's raining. Your boyfriend/girlfriend has just called you. He/She is trying to persuade you to go to the forest with his/her father to hunt rabbits. You think it's a bad idea and you'd rather stay in bed. Anyway, you are against hunting. Give better ideas how to spend rainy Saturday together.

VOCA L V A R I A L Y P E O P L E A N D N A T U R E

- NOUNS
  acid rain - kyslý dážď
  ape - lúdoop
  bison - bizón, zubor
  cycle of nature - přírodní cyklus
  degradation - zhoršení
  destruction - zničení
  disappearance - úbytek
  drought - sucho
  eagle - orol
  Earth - Země
  earthquake - zemětřesení
  environment - životní prostředí
  environmentalist - ochrana životního prostředí
  flood (čítaj řad) - záplava
  fox - líška
  frost - mráz
  global warming - globálne oteplenie
  heat - horúčava
  hurricane - hurikán
  laws of nature - zákony přírody
  light showers - sprška, slabý dážď
  living conditions - životné podmienky
  man - človek; muž
  nature lover - milovník přírody
  ozone layer - ozónová vrstva
  oxygen - kyslík
  permission - povolenie
  plant - rastlina
  pollution - znečištění
  progress - pokrok
  prohibition - zákaz
  rabbit - zajac
  Red List of Threatened Species - Červený zoznam ohrožených druhov
  rhino - nosorožec indický
  soil - pôda
  species - druh (rastlinný/živočišný)
  storm - búrka
  scientist - vedec
  thunderstorm - búrka
  tornado - tornado
  turtle - korytnačka
  volcano - sopka
  volunteer - dobrovoľník
  weather forecast - predpoveď počasí
  whale - veľryba
  wolf (množné číslo: wolves) - vlk

- ADJECTIVES
  cloudy - obláčný
  forbidden - zakázaný
  marine - morský
11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Life with and without inventions (život s vynálezmi a bez nich)
Interesting inventions (pozoruhodné objavy)
What I use – computer, mobile, television
(co využívám – počítač, mobil, televízor)
Describing a machine – its size, shape, material and usage
(opis prístroja – jeho velikost, tvár, materiál a použitie)

1. Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
   1. Which technological inventions are the most important for you?
   2. How often do you use a mobile phone?
   3. What do people use computers for?

Technology is a product of science. Society depends on technology and technology exists thanks to the needs of society. New technological inventions make people's life easier. The industrial revolution, which started in the 18th century in England, brought many technological changes and inventions. Since then, technology has become part of our everyday life.

People made big scientific and technological progress in transport, medicine, biology and information technology. The progress in the car industry and aviation is also incredible. We can see it when we compare how people travelled in the past and how they travel today.

Great progress has been made in medicine. Science and technology helps ease the pain of some diseases, it cures them and prevents some of them too. Nowadays, doctors can help in surgeries that are taking place in another part of the country. On the video phone, a doctor can see the patient and speak directly to the doctors performing the operation.

During the last ten years, there was a great change in information and communication technologies, especially in wireless technology. Nowadays, computers are used almost everywhere. The inventions of a cell phone and the Internet help people communicate faster. Mobile phones are a symbol of comfortable and quick communication or fashion, mainly among the young. A cell phone, music player, camera and a palm computer are being put together into one little gadget.

The Internet saves our time and money to find information. Many professions or services depend on the Internet. Via the Internet, we send documents, buy things, book hotels, reserve tickets, transfer our money or find life partners. These days, more and more people use e-mail to communicate and send information or documents. Many Slovaks use the Internet as a type of entertainment. They can easily find articles about what they are interested in, download music...
or films. Chatting, joining different discussion groups and reading blogs is very popular, especially among the young.

Modern technology helps us daily. However, it can also be misused. For example, on the one hand, we drive cars daily and on the other hand, they pollute the air.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What technological inventions make our life easier?
2. In which sectors was the greatest technological progress made?
3. How does modern technology help in medicine?
4. What do people use the Internet for?
5. How can modern technology be misused?
6. What types of cell phones, do you think, will your children use one day?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** From the list below, choose the things which you use daily and things which you do not use at all. Then decide which thing is the most important and the least important for your life and say why.

- hair dryer
- washing machine
- mobile phone
- car
- fridge
- microwave oven
- television
- computer
- cooker
- lighter
- CD player
- camera
- toaster
- vacuum cleaner

Start like this:
I daily use... The most important thing for me is... because...
I never use... The least important thing for me is... because...

**B** Choose one thing from the list above and describe it. Talk about its size, shape, material it is made of and its usage. Then explain what you use it for. Your classmates guess what it is.

**SIZE:** It's small/little/big/large/heavy/light/short/long...

**SHAPE:** It's round/square/rectangular/oval...

**MATERIAL:** It's made of plastic/leather/glass/metal/wood/paper/stone...

**USAGE:** It's a machine/an instrument/an equipment which I use for... -ing. It is used to...

**DATABASE, MOUSE, E-MAIL, SOFTWARE, MODERN KEYBOARD, PRINTER, MONITOR, WORD PROCESSOR, BROWSER, OPERATING SYSTEM**

Example: You have to click the left button on the **mouse**.

1. She sent me a short message through _____________.
2. I use a ____________ to connect to the Internet at home.
4. I always find it hard to find z and x on the ____________.
5. The screen on my ____________ is too small.
6. I'm getting better at writing letters using my new ____________.
7. He uses a ____________ to keep a record of his video collection.
8. Computer piracy is when you illegally copy ____________.
9. My ____________ has run out of ink.
10. Microsoft Explorer is the most popular ____________.

**D** What do you use a computer for? Choose from the box.

Start like this:

1. daily  | use a computer | for... -ing...
         | sometimes      |
         | never          | to...

- write documents
- play games
- browse the Internet
- watch DVDs
- listen to CDs
- make music
- download music
- read online books
- learn English
- send e-mails
- do online shopping
- draw pictures
- save photographs
- burn CDs
- chat on the Internet
- pay bills
- look for life partners
**Task 1**

Look at the pictures below. Describe them and talk about:
- what children are using the computer for,
- what the older person is using it for,
- what skills children learn when they use the computers,
- the barriers of older people to learn how to use computers,
- how people can become dependent on using computers.

**Task 2**

Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of using modern technologies, such as mobile phones, televisions and cars. Say which of them, you think, is the most needed for people. Explain your reasons. Say how cars will look like in fifty years. Talk about their size, shape and material they will be made of.

**Task 3 Simulation**

A friend of yours wants to buy your mobile phone. First, describe it and then explain him/her all the functions it has.

---

**VOCABULARY SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

- **NOUNS**
  - advantage – výhoda
  - aviation – letectvo
  - barrier – bariéra
  - blog (weblog) – internetový deník, v ktorom autor pravidelne vyjadruje svoje názory na rôzne tém
  - browser – prehliadac
  - camera – fotoaparát
  - cell phone/mobile phone – mobilný telefon
  - cooker – sporák
  - disadvantage – nevýhoda
  - disease – choroba
  - entertainment – zábava
  - equipment – zariadenie
  - fridge – chladnička
  - gadget – zariadenie
  - glass – sklo
  - hair dryer – fén
  - ink – atrament
  - invention – vynález
  - keyboard – klávesnica
  - leather – koža
  - lighter – zapalovač
  - metal – kov
  - microwave oven – mikrovlnná rúra
  - need – potreba
  - pain – bolest
  - palm computer – počítač do dlaní
  - printer – tlačiareň
  - Progress – pokrok
  - science – veda
  - screen – obrazovka
  - service – služba
  - shape – tvar
  - size – veľkosť
  - skill – zručnosť
  - stone – kamien
  - surgery – chirurgický zákrok, operácia
  - toaster – hriankovač
  - transport – preprava
  - vacuum cleaner – vysávač
  - washing machine – práčka
  - wood – drevo
  - word processor – textový editor

- **ADJECTIVES**
  - comfortable – pohodlný
  - dependent on – závislá na
  - heavy – tažký (o váhe)
  - important – dôležitý
  - incredible – neuverejné
  - light – lživý (o váhe)
  - missed – zneužitý
  - quick – rýchly
  - rectangular – obdĺžnikový
  - round – okrúhly
  - scientific – vedecký
  - square – štvorcový
  - wireless – bezdrôtový

- **VERBS**
  - to book (hotel) – rezervovať si (hotel/ ubytovanie)
  - to burn (CD) – napáliť (CD)
  - to close down – zatvoriť
  - to cure – liečiť
  - to decide – rozhodnúť sa
  - to depend on (on) – závisieť (na)
  - to describe – opisať
  - to ease – uľahčiť
  - to explain – vysvetliť
  - to find (hard) – považovať za (tažké)
  - to get better (at) – zlepšiť sa
  - to guess – hádať
  - to join – pridať sa
  - to keep a record – zachovať si záznam
  - to look like – vyzerať
  - to perform (the operation) – uskutočniť (operáciu)
  - to pollute – znečisťovať
  - to save – uchováť
  - to switch on – zapnúť
  - to switch off – vypnúť
  - to take place – konáť sa
  - to transfer (money) – previesť (peniaze)
  - to use – používať
12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY

Social behaviour of the young and the old (spoločenské správanie mladých a starších ľudí)
Social etiquette, greetings, meetings, visits, social conversation (spoločenská etika, pozdravy, stretnutia, návštevy, spoločenská konverzácia)
Communication among people (komunikácia v rôznych situáciách)
Making requests (požiadavky o niečo)
Offering help (ponúknúť pomoc)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. What do you understand by social behaviour?
2. How should the young behave towards the old?
3. What do you know about the table etiquette?

Etiquette describes formal rules and traditions of behaviour in a certain society and culture. Modern etiquette teaches us to greet people with respect, offer hospitality to guests, wear clothing appropriate for certain occasions, join the conversations without dominating them. It also describes how to behave in specific situations. It teaches us to offer a chair, help those who need it, eat neatly and quietly, not to play loud music or make noise and arrive in time when visiting somebody.

Different social rules are followed at home, at work and in business. The social rules of hosting guests, dining, clothing, etc. are specific for different cultures. What is appropriate in one culture (for example in a European country) can be totally unacceptable in another culture (for example in a Muslim country). Some rules are the same all around the world. It is important to be polite and to use the magic words: “Thank you”, “Please”, “Sorry”. When somebody invites us for a visit, we should come in time. We should bring a small present to the host, for example flowers, chocolate or a bottle of wine. It is not polite to visit somebody without arranging it in advance. The food etiquette includes some rules. For example, it is impolite to ask for more food. It is fine to have more food when it is offered by the hosts. The tea should be poured from a teapot after a minute or two it has been made. Soup should be eaten quietly. Hands should never be used for eating.

Children learn the social rules from their parents, teachers and friends. It is important to teach them what behaviour is correct and wrong. Family is the place where social behaviour is formed. If parents speak rudely, children will imitate their “models”. If parents have only TV dinners, children will not know how to behave at the table. Small things, such as talking to people with respect, listening to them and showing empathy, should be normal in every family.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What are the basic rules of modern etiquette?
2. Why are some social rules specific for different cultures?
3. Why is the loss of manners a serious problem in the modern society?
4. How can parents raise their children tolerant, respectful and empathetic?
5. How can teachers teach children the rules of social behaviour?
6. Name three examples of the table etiquette.

☐ PRACTICE TASKS

A What are the features of people having good manners and people having bad manners?

tolerant angry impolite friendly sympathetic respectful polite rude loud egoistic generous selfish cruel helpful reliable willing

B Which things are polite (P) and which are impolite (I) during a conversation?

1. to have eye contact with the partner ______ P
2. to touch the partner ______ I
3. to speak loudly ______ I
4. to ask for repetition ______ P
5. to bite fingernails ______ I
6. to speak quietly ______ P
7. to speak a lot ______ I
8. to interrupt a conversation ______ I
9. to listen to the partner ______ P

C When we ask other people to do something for us, we make REQUESTS (R). When we want to help people, we OFFER HELP (O).

Example: I'll do this for you if you want. O
Do you think you could drive me home? R

1. Could you lend me some money? ______ O
2. Shall I open the window? ______ O
3. May I offer you some drink? ______ O
4. I'll pay that for you. ______ O
5. Do you think you could call me? ______ O
6. Would you mind coming a bit later? ______ O
7. Can I help you with your bags? ______ O

D What would you DO and what would you SAY in the following situations?

1. You are travelling by bus. You are sitting on the seat, a pregnant woman is getting on. All seats are taken.
2. An old man with a walking stick is going up the stairs.
3. A woman with shopping bags is trying to open the door.
4. A little boy is crying in the street.
5. A young woman has difficulties to park her car.

E How would you react if you were offered help in the situations above?

What would you say if you were:

1. the pregnant woman ______
2. the old man ______
3. the woman with shopping bags ______
4. the little boy ______
5. the young woman with bad parking skills ______

F Who would say the following lines during a home visit: GUESTS (G) or HOSTS (H)?

Example: Sorry, we are late. (G)

1. The food is delicious. ______ (H)
2. Would you like more salad? ______ (G)
3. Welcome. ______ (H)
4. May I take your coat? ______ (G)
5. Shall we go? ______ (H)
6. I’ll call a taxi for you. ______ (G)
7. Here’s a small gift for you. ______ (H)
8. Please, sit down. ______ (H)
9. Would you like some slippers? ______ (G)
10. What a beautiful house! ______ (H)
11. It was nice to visit you. ______ (H)
12. Do you want to see the house? ______ (G)
Sample Exam Paper 12: People and Society

Task 1

Look at the picture below. Talk about:
- the people in the picture – who they are and what their relationship is,
- their physical appearance,
- their social behaviour,
- how they "communicate" together,
- what the boy is telling the man.
Have you ever talked or listened to somebody like this? To whom? When and why?

Task 2

- Explain the meaning of the following statement.

Good manners will open doors that the best education cannot.
(Clarke Thomas)

- Give few examples of good social manners.
- Say how parents can give good social model to their children.
- Talk about the attitude of some young people towards modern etiquette. Say which manners they accept and which manners they refuse.

Task 3: Simulation

Your English friend is coming to visit you and your family. He wants to know some basic rules of how to behave as a guest in a Slovak family. Tell him about greetings, gifts for the hosts, frequent topics of conversations, the basic rules of table etiquette (what to do/say if you do not like the food, etc.) and when it is polite to leave.

Vocabulary

Nouns
- attitude – postoj
- behaviour – správanie
- difficulty – tažkost, problém
- empathy – empatia, včitie sa
- feature – črta, vlastnosť
- fingernail – necht
- gift – darček
- greeting – pozdrav
- guest – host
- hospitality – pohostinnosť
- host – hosť
- manner – mravy, správanie, chovanie
- occasion – príležitosť
- offer – ponuka
- physical appearance – vonkajší vzhľad
- relationship – vztah
- repetition – opakovanie
- request – žiadosť
- respect – úcta
- rule – pravidlo
- seat – miesto (na sedenie)
- slippers – papuče
- social behaviour – spoločenské správanie
- social model – spoločenský vzor
- society – spoločnosť
- stairs – schody
- statement – výpoved, výrok
- topic – téma
- TV dinner – večera pri TV
- walking stick – vychádzková palica

Verbs
- to accept – prijať
- to arrange in advance – dohodnúť, zariadiť vopred
- to arrive in time – prísť včas
- to behave – správať sa
- to bite – obhýrať si (nechtý)
- to cry – plakať
- to describe – opisovať
- to follow – (na)sledovať
- to greet – zdraviť
- to host – hosť
- to imitate – napodobňovať
- to interrupt – prerušiť
- to invite – pozvať
- to join – pridať sa
- to leave – odštíp
- to lend – posákať nekomu
- to make noise – robiť hluk
- to offer – ponúkať
- to pour – lievať
- to refuse – odmietnuť
- to sort out – roztrieštiť
- to touch – dotknúť sa
- to welcome – vítati

Adjectives
- angry – nahnevaný
- appropriate – vhodný
- basic – základný
- correct – správny, vhodný
- cruel – krutý
- delicious – výborný, chuťný
- generous – štedrý
- impolite – nezdvořilý
- magic – čarovný
- polite – zdvořilý
- pregnant – tehotná
- reliable – spoločenský
- respectful – respektuojúci
- rude – hrubý
- selfish – sebecký
- sensitive – citlivý
- social – spoločenský
- sympathetic – súctný
- unacceptable – neprijatelný
- willing – ochotný
- wrong – nesprávny, nevhodný

Other
- neatly – slušne
- quietly – ticho
- rudely – neslušne, hrubo
- towards – voči
13 The Young and Their World

The young, their characteristics, hobbies and activities
(Mládí lidi, ich charakteristika, záujmy a aktivity)
Place of the young in the society (postavenie mladých v spoločnosti)
Friendship and love (prietelstvo a láská)
Describing people - their appearance, qualities, lifestyle, opinions, problems
(opis lidi - ich zovňovanie, vlastnosti, životný štýl, názory, problémy)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What does a typical teenager look like?
2. How does a typical teenager behave?
3. What are common problems of the young in our society?

People from the age of thirteen to the age of nineteen are called "teenagers" because their age ends in "teen" in English. During puberty, most children go through dramatic physical changes. Teenagers also undergo mental developments. Their emotional life is more intensive than before. Love and friendship become the most important values. Teenagers prefer relationships with their peers to their parents.

Young people often feel unstable and look for security. They search for a unique identity. Sports players, rock stars, film actors, reality show stars often become their role models. Teenagers care a lot what they look like. They follow the fashion trends closely and they always want to be "in". They have similar interests, such as music, dance, film or fashion. They identify themselves with others, but at the same time they want to be different and develop their own individuality.

This age of revolt often leads to conflicts between the generations, called a generation gap. Young people think that their parents care too much and are overprotective. Children often have different ideas about their future, different life expectations and opinions on drug use or politics than their parents do. All this creates tension between parents and children. They also differ in clothing and hairstyles. Most teenagers would like to start their own independent lives but are still financially dependent on their parents. In this age, young people are under pressure. They have to decide about their future career.

Unemployment is a big problem in our society. Financial worries, frustration, unstable emotions and lack of emotional intelligence among some adolescents may also lead to youth crime, such as vandalism and violence. Groups of youngsters with racial prejudice often provoke conflicts in many countries. Alcoholism, drug use and gambling are the results of frustration, family conflicts or other teenage problems.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What is puberty?
2. What changes do teenagers go through?
3. How do most teenagers feel?
4. What interests do teenagers have?
5. What do you understand by “generation gap”?
6. What are the common teenage problems?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** Look at the picture below. Which adjectives from the box below best describe the man on the left, the boy in the middle and the man on the right?

- independent
- alone
- unemployed
- friendly
- unstable
- worried
- busy
- addicted
- tired
- overprotective
- careless
- frustrated
- mature
- easy-going
- prejudiced
- secure
- responsible
- stressed
- ignoring

**B** Describe the people in the picture above by giving answers to the questions below.

**Who are the people? What do they look like? What are they like? Where are they? What are they doing? Why are they there?**

**C** What do you think about the boy in the middle? Who are his role-models? What kind of a person will he be one day? Like the man on the right or the man on the left?

**D** Compare and contrast the lifestyle of the people in the picture in task A. Talk about their families, daily duties, activities and hobbies. What do they have in common?

**To compare:** like, similar, the same as  
**To contrast:** unlike, different, in contrast

**E** What are the people in the picture in task A thinking about? Would they ever talk to each other? Would they criticise or give compliments to each other? Which of them would probably say the following lines?

1. “What an awful hairstyle!”
2. “I don’t care about anything and anybody.”
3. “I need more space for sitting.”

**F** Talk about teenagers, their feelings, opinions, behaviour, problems and lifestyle. Use the phrases below and develop them.

**Example:** provoke conflicts  
Some teenagers provoke conflicts with their parents when they have different ideas.

- go through physical and mental changes
- have different opinions
- look for security
- differ in clothing and hairstyle
- follow fashion trends
- feel under pressure
- be independent
- identify with role models
- search for a unique identity
- depend on parents

**SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 13  THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD**

**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 196

Read the text below. Compare the changing approach of some American parents towards their children with the Slovak parents’ approach. Talk about how good relationship between parents and their teenage children can be created.

American psychologists say that the authoritative approach towards children is not so frequent any more. They say that the generation gap is getting smaller in many families. There are less and less strict authoritative parents and more and more parents that are friends to their children. They share interests with their children and are more open. Discussions on subjects, such as sex and drugs, are becoming normal. They try to make their children happy – the word “fun” is more frequent than the word “responsibility”. Good parents try to show sympathy and understanding towards their children if they are in trouble.
Task 2

Talk about teenagers, their appearance, behaviour, opinions, problems, lifestyle, activities and hobbies. Explain why there often is a generation gap between parents and their teenage children.

Task 3 Role-play

You: Look at the picture in task A. You are the man in the suit. You are in bad mood because you were fired today and your job was given to some unexperienced teenager. Criticise young people, their opinions, lifestyle, appearance and behaviour.

Your partner: Look at the picture in task A. You are the teenage boy in the middle. You are sitting next to an angry man who was fired today and whose job was given to some unexperienced teenager. The man in the suit is very angry and he criticises all the young, their opinions, lifestyle, appearance and behaviour. You cannot listen to him anymore. Defend yourself, your hairstyle and the young people.

VOCABULARY THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD

■ NOUNS

age – věk
appearance – výzor
approach – přístup
behaviour – správání
clothing – oblečení
development – rozvoj
drug use – užívání drog
duty – povinnost
expectation – očakávání
friendship – přátelství
fun – zábava
gambling – hazardné hranie
generation gap – generacný rozdiel
identity – identita
individuality – osobnost
intelligence – inteligencia
lack of – nedostatok
mood – nálada
opinion – názor
peer – rověšník
prejudice – předstup
pressure – tlak
reason – příčina

relationship – vztah
responsibility – zodpovědnost
result – výsledok
revolt – vzbúra, odpor
role model – vzor, příklad
security – bezpečie
society – společnost
suit – oblek
sympathy – sůrce
tension – napětí
unemployment – nezamestnanost
value – hodnota
violence – násilí
younger – mladší
worry – trápenie, starost

■ ADJECTIVES

addicted – závislý
angry – nahněvaný
authoritative – autoritativný
careless – lahostajný, nedbalý
common – spoločný
daily – denný
dependent (on) – závislý (na)
different – odlišný
easy-going – bezstarostný, lákomyseľný
financial – finančný
fired – prepustený (z práce)
frustrated – frustrovaný
future – budúci
ignoring – nevšimnuto
important – dôležitý
independent – nezávislý
intensive – intenzívny
mature – zreli
mental – psychický
overprotective – příliš ochraňující
prejudiced – zaujatý, s předsudkami
racial – rasistický
responsible – zodpovědný
secure – jemný, bezstarostný
similar – podobný
stressed – stresovaný
strict – přísný

■ VERBS

to behave – správáť sa
to be “in” – byť “in”, byť moderný
to be in trouble – mať problém

to care – staráť sa
to compare – porovnat, nájsť spoločné znaky
to contrast – nájsť odlišné znaky
to create – vytvoriť

to defend – brániť sa
to develop – rozvíniť

to differ – líšiť sa
to follow trends – sledovať trendy
to get smaller – zmenšovať sa

to give compliments – dať komplimenty
to go through – prejsť čím
to have in common – mať spoločné

to identify – určiť, označiť
to lead (to) – visieť (k čomu)
to look for – hľadať

to look like – vyzeráť ako
to prefer – uprednostňovať

to search – pátrať po

to share – deliť sa o

to try – skúsť, pokúsť sa

to undergo – podstúpiť

to undergo - podstúpiť

other
alone – sám
at the same time – zároveň
closely – tesne, blizko
each other – jeden druhému
ever – (vôbec) niekedy
in contrast – v porovnaní
in the middle – v strede
like – ako
once – raz
still – stále, ešte
the same as – rovnaký ako
towards – smerom k
unlike – na rozdiel od
14 FOOD

Food and drinks - breakfast, lunch, dinner (jedla a nápoje - raňajky, obed, večera)
National cuisines (národné kuchyne)
Eating at home, at school, at a restaurant (stravovanie doma, v škole, v restaurácií)
My favourite food (moje oblíbené jedlo)
Describing the process of food preparation - recipes (opis procesu varenia - recepty)
Expressing compliments and criticism about the food (hodnotenie jedla)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. What is your favourite food?
2. Who are vegetarians?
3. What meals can you prepare?

Normally, we eat three times a day - we have breakfast, lunch and dinner. Eating habits depend on the lifestyle of people. Busy managers do not eat regularly, young people often choose fast food, women who want to lose weight eat as little as possible and kids are often fussy about their food.

Slovaks usually have bread with butter, jam, honey, ham or cheese for breakfast; some prefer scrambled eggs or sausage. The English usually begin the day with a cup of tea or coffee. The traditional English breakfast starts with cereals - porridge or cornflakes. This is sometimes followed by fried bacon and eggs or sausages with fried tomatoes, often on the weekends.

In our country lunch is the main meal consisting of soup, a main course with a side dish and a dessert. Slovaks like to eat meat, usually pork, beef or poultry with potatoes or rice. Bystrovo halušky (gnocchi with sheep cheese) is considered a Slovak national meal. Hungarian cuisine, typical for spicy meals, is quite popular in the southern parts of Slovakia. Italian cuisine, mostly pizza and pasta, has become very popular in our country and it is preferred to traditional Slovak meals in many restaurants. Some Slovaks like going to Chinese or Mexican restaurants. Schoolchildren have lunch in canteens. Businessmen eat in restaurants where a daily menu at reduced prices is offered during lunchtime. In Britain lunch is a light meal consisting of a warm dish (rarely soup) and a dessert, or just sandwiches, some fruit, pudding or ice cream. Beef, chicken or lamb is served with potatoes, vegetables and gravy. Many Americans like to have lunch and dinner "out" - at snack bars, fast food restaurants or expensive hotels. They also use take-away services.

Dinner, the main meal in Britain and America, is served in the evening at between 6 and 7 o'clock when all the members of the family are at home. This meal is often eaten in front of the television. Most dinners during the week are simple, often using pre-cooked food with frozen vegetables, which can be heated quickly.

Many supermarkets sell frozen "TV dinners", which can be quickly prepared in the oven or a microwave. Typical take-away food includes pizza, Chinese food and the traditional fish and chips. The Slovaks prepare dinner themselves at home. It is either a warm meal or a sandwich. Sometimes they order pizza. Some people have a light supper, often cheese and biscuits and a glass of milk or a mug of cocoa before going to bed.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What does the traditional English breakfast consist of?
2. What do the Slovaks have for lunch?
3. What is the main meal of the day for the English?
4. Explain the expression "fast food".
5. What are take-away services?
6. What should people do to stay healthy?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which food or meals below do you eat for breakfast, lunch and dinner?

- bread
- roll
- sausage
- garlic soup
- cornflakes
- chicken with rice
- pizza
- cake
- bread
- butter
- scrambled eggs
- ham and eggs
- sandwich
- cabbage soup
- ice cream
- fish and chips
- tuna salad
- lettuce
- fried bacon
- vegetable salad
- pasta
- beef with potatoes
- cheese
- lentil soup
- French fries

B Read the British recipe for the cabbage soup. Compare the ingredients and the process of its preparation with the cabbage soup cooked in Slovakia.

Cabbage soup
Overall timing: 2 hours. To serve 4 persons.
225g onions, 1 garlic, 3 tbsp oil, 350g beef, 350g canned cabbage, fennel seeds, salt, 2 litres stock, 125g bacon, 2 frankfurters, paprika, flour, water, sour cream
Peel and slice onions. Peel and crush garlic. Heat 2 tablespoons of oil in large saucepan. Add onions and garlic and fry over moderate heat till golden. Cut beef into small cubes, add to pan and brown all over.
Add canned cabbage, fennel seeds and salt to the pan. Cover with the stock (made with 2 stock cubes if necessary) and simmer gently for 1 hour or till meat is tender. Chop the bacon. Fry bacon in a frying pan till crisp, then add the sliced frankfurters and paprika. Cook for 5 minutes, then remove and add to the saucepan. Blend flour with cold water in a bowl till smooth, then stir into the soup mixture and cook for further 5 minutes. Stir in the sour cream and serve at once with slices of brown bread.
Now talk about your favourite food. Say what ingredients you need to prepare it. Describe how to prepare it. Use the following expressions:

add salt  
bake eggs  
chop the bacon  
bring to the boil  
cook for 5 minutes  
cut the meat  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fry</td>
<td>bacon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grate</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melt</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peel</td>
<td>onions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pour</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-heat</td>
<td>the oven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinkle</td>
<td>with herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sift</td>
<td>flour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simmer</td>
<td>gently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slice</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serve</td>
<td>with brown bread</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Which sentences below express compliments and which express criticism about the food?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How's your (soup, meat, cake...)?</th>
<th>How do you like (the soup, meat, cake...)?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It tastes good/delicious.</td>
<td>It's tasteless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think it's too spicy/salty/overcooked.</td>
<td>There's not enough salt in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's not salty enough.</td>
<td>I love it. It's very tasty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a restaurant. Who says the following lines? A waiter (W) or a customer (C)?

Example: Have you ordered yet? W

1. What would you like to eat/drink? C
2. I'd like to have two burgers, please. W
3. Can I have the bill, please? W
4. I'd like to order a pizza, please. C
5. What are you going to have for dessert? C
6. I'm afraid there's a fly/hair in my soup. W
7. Could you pass me the salt, please? W
8. I can't decide. What do you recommend? C
9. I recommend our chocolate ice cream. W
10. Did you enjoy your meal? C
11. I like it. I like it a lot. It's fantastic. W
12. Are you fine? C
13. Oh, I'm very sorry about it. W
14. Enjoy your meal. C

Sample Exam Paper 14: Food

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 196

Read the text below and discuss the changing trends of eating habits in Britain. Say what the British eat to stay fit and healthy. Express your opinion about vegetarians.

Recently, there have been great changes in eating habits. English favourites, sausages, fried eggs, bacon and chips are now on decline. Many people think that too much fat may cause diseases, such as diabetes and heart disease. Therefore they drink more skimmed milk, prefer wholemeal or brown bread to the white one and eat less butter. They also cut down on meat. The British eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, food rich in fibre, and low-fat products with no sugar or cholesterol. Many young people in Britain are now vegetarian, which means that they do not eat meat or fish. Vegetarian food is easily available in British shops and supermarkets. Britain's food industry now also produces more tasty low-fat food.

Task 2

Talk about the eating habits of young people. Talk about:
- the food the young usually have for breakfast/lunch/dinner.
- favourite food of young people,
- pros and cons of fast food restaurants.

Task 3: Role-play

You: You are having a dinner in an expensive restaurant with your parents. Unfortunately, there are some problems. Complain to the manager of the restaurant about the quality of the food, service and waiting time. Your parents are not willing to pay for the food.

Your partner: You are the manager of an expensive restaurant. Some guests are complaining about the food, service and waiting time. They even refuse to pay for the food. Apologise to them and charge only for drinks.
**VOCABULARY FOOD**

**NOUNS**
- beef - hovädzie mäso
- bowl - misa, miska
- bread and butter - chlieb s maslom
- bread roll - rohlík
- breakfast - raňajky
- biscuits - sušienky
- butter - maslo
- cabbage - kapusta
- cake - koláč
- canned cabbage - kapusta z konzervy
- canteen - jedáleň
- cereals - obiliny
- cheese - syr
- cornflakes - kukuričné lupienky
- cube - kocka
- cuisine - národná kuchyňa
- daily menu - denné menu
- dessert - dezert
- diabetes - cukrovka
- dinner - večera
- dish - jedlo, chod
- eating habits - stravovacie návyky
- fast food - rýchle jedlo
- fenugreek - fenilkové semiačko
- fibre - vlákna
- fish and chips - ryba s hranolkami
- flour - múka
- French fries - hranolky (amer. angl.)
- fried bacon - pečená šalána
- frying pan - panvica na vyprážanie
- garlic - cesnak
- gnocchi (čítať noči) - halušky
- gravy - šťava z mäsa, omáčka
- ham - šunka
- heart disease - ochorené srdač
- honey - med
- ingredient - prísada
- lamb - jahňa
- lentil - šótovica
- lettuce - hlávkový šalát
- lunch - obed
- main meal, main course - hlavné jedlo
- meat - mäso

**ADJECTIVES**
- microwave - mikrovlnná rúra
- mug - hrnček
- oil - olej
- onion - cibuľa
- oven - rúra
- overall timing - celkový čas
- pan - panvica, pekáč, hrniec
- paprika - paprika
- pasta - cestoviny
- pork - bravčové mäso
- porridge - kaša
- poultry - hydina
- pre-cooked food - predvarené jedlo,
  - polotovar
- preparation - priprava
- price - cena
- recipe - recept
- salt - sóľ
- saucepan - panvica, kastróľ
- sausage - párok, klobása
- scrambled eggs - praženica
- sheep cheese - ovčí syr
- side dish - príloha
- skimmed milk - odstr延edené mlieko
- slice of bread - krajec chlieba
- soup - polievka
- sour cream - kyslá smotana
- stock - másový vývar, bujón
- supper - (druhá) večera
- take-away (food) - jedlo so sebou
- tbsp (tablespoon) - polievková lyžica
- tuna salad - tuniakový šalát
- TV dinner - večera při televíziore
- vegetable salad - zeleninový šalát

**VERBS**
- to add - pridať
- to apologise - ospravedlniť sa
- to beat eggs - vyšľať vajcia
- to blend - vymiešať, zmiešať
- to bring to the boil - priviešť k varu
- to brown - pražiť
- to cause - spôsobiť
- to charge - účtovať za
- to chop - jemne nakrájať, nasekať
- to complain - stažovať sa
- to consider - považovať
- to consist of - pozostávať z
- to cover - zakryť
- to crush - rozdržiť
- to cut - nakrájať
- to cut down - znižiť, zredukovať
- to depend on - závisiet (na)
- to follow - nasledovať
- to fry - vyprážať, smažiť
- to grate cheese - struhať syr
- to heat - zohriť
- to include - zahriňať
- to lose weight - schudnúť
- to melt sugar - roztopiť cukor
- to offer - ponúkať
- to order - objednať si
- to peel - olúpať, očistíť
- to pour water - naláti vodu
- to prefer - prednostňovať
- to pre-heat the oven - predhriť rúru
- to prepare - pripraviť
- to refuse - odmietnuť
- to remove - odstrániť
- to serve with - podávať s
- to sift flour - prosiať múku
- to simmer - varit na miernom ohni
- to slice - nakrájať
- to sprinkle with herbs - posypať bylinkami
- to stay fit - byť fit
- to stir - miesať

**OTHER**
- at reduced prices - za znížené ceny
- either... or - buď... alebo
- gently - jemne
- on decline - na úpadku
- recently - nedávno
- unfortunately - naneštastie

**PHRASES**


*In a restaurant – v reštaurácii*
- What would you like to eat/drink? Čo si dáte/dáš na jedenie/na pitie?
- I'd like to have... please. Dal/a by som si... prosím.
- Can I have the bill, please? Môžem dostáť účet, prosím?
- How do you like it? Ako vám/ti chutí?
- I'm afraid there's a fly/hair in my soup. Obávam sa, že v mojej polievke je moucha/vlas.
- Could you pass me the salt, please? Podáli by ste mi/Podá mi si mi sol, prosím?
- Enjoy your meal. Dobrú chuť.
15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

Free time after work or study is called leisure time. It is the time for fun, entertainment, going out or doing hobbies. Hobbies are connected to lifestyles. Some people like to be on their own and learn new things by reading books. Others enjoy company and often go out or do collective sports. Our hobbies should fit our character and complement well our work or study.

Teenagers have their own special leisure interests. These include playing team sports, dancing at a favourite disco, going to parties or joining some clubs. They like to spend their leisure time actively in groups, in good company. Those who prefer staying at home usually watch DVDs, listen to music, browse the Internet or chat on the Internet. Typical teenage sports are roller-skating and skateboarding.

Many children and young people join different clubs where they practise their hobbies. The most popular are football, tennis, dance or horse riding clubs. Sometimes, it is not their choice but the choice of their parents. Some parents force their children to play an instrument or do some sport because they think they will prevent them from taking drugs or drinking alcohol.

Many people have creative hobbies, such as acting, choir singing, folk dancing and playing pop-music in amateur groups. Photography, painting and drawing are also popular hobbies. There are many opportunities for people to develop their talents in these areas.

A lot of people, both children and adults, keep a pet. Older people like gardening, doing practical jobs around their houses (DIY – do it yourself), fishing, reading, going to theatre, concerts or art exhibitions. Slovak pensioners are quite traditional and prefer staying at home.

At present, more and more people of all ages spend their leisure time doing exercises to keep fit. Hiking, cycling, rowing, playing golf and tennis are enjoyed by people all over the world. It is quite common to see parties of hikers, cyclists or rowers spending their weekends outdoors. Those who prefer indoor physical exercises, such as body building or aerobics, go to fitness centres. A relatively recent sport enjoyed by the young is snow-boarding, which combines skiing, surfing and skateboarding. Many Slovaks travel abroad to practise less common sports, such as scuba diving, yachting and playing golf.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What is leisure time?
2. Why are hobbies connected to lifestyles?
3. What do teenagers do during their leisure time?
4. Why do some parents tell their children what hobbies to practise?
5. What are creative hobbies?
6. Which indoor and outdoor sports do people practise as their hobbies?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which of the following hobbies are individual/collective hobbies or both?

- collecting stamps
- dance
- skateboarding
- horse riding
- playing the piano
- choir singing
- aerobics
- body building
- gardening
- reading
- tennis
- hiking
- yachting
- diving
- photography
- DIY

B What instruments/equipment/tools/special clothes do you need to practise the hobbies above?

Example: tennis – racket, tennis ball, net, good trainers

C Which hobby/hobbies would you recommend to these people? Which hobby/hobbies wouldn’t you recommend them? Explain the reasons of your choice.

Example: a young businessman who loves adventure and fun

I think that this person should practise some adrenaline sports, such as scuba diving or yachting. These are adventurous sports and they will bring him/her a lot of relax and fun in a team.

I don’t think that he/she would be interested in something like collecting stamps. I think it would be boring for him/her.
1. a bored teenager who likes movement, fun and company of friends
2. a talented girl who likes singing
3. an older man who works physically a lot
4. a middle-aged woman who wants to lose some weight
5. a pregnant woman
6. a middle-aged man who underwent an operation
7. a retired couple who like spending time together
8. a hyperactive small child
9. a teenage girl who loves adrenaline sports
10. the only child who feels lonely

**D**
You are interested in attending the course of diving. Ask questions about the age limit, number of lessons, study material, other participants, diving instructors, practical part of the course, equipment for diving, the price of the course. Start to ask like this:

**Sorry, what/who/where/why/how...?**
**Excuse me, do you know...?**
**Excuse me, could you tell me...?**
**I’m interested in...**

**E**
Now role-play the dialogue with the diving instructor. Use the questions from the previous activity.

**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 196

Look at the pictures below. Talk about how people in the pictures usually spend their free time. Say why some people prefer spending their free time alone.

**Role Play**

YOU: Your parents force you to play the piano. You hate going to the music school. You think that you are not talented enough. You do not like the teacher and the teacher doesn’t like you. You want to start to play football instead. Explain this to your parents and give strong logical arguments. Start like this:

Mum, Dad, I want to tell you something.
How should I say this?
You know, I think that...

I hate...
I promise I will...
I’d rather...
I’d like to...

YOUR PARENTS: Your child attends the music school to learn how to play the piano. You think that he is very talented. You want him/her to continue because you think it is the best hobby for him/her.
Talk about the most popular hobbies in Slovakia among the children, teenagers and adults. Talk about your hobbies. Say how often you practise them, with, where and why. Say what other hobbies you would like to practise in the future.

Your younger brother has decided to attend a diving course. You are not happy about it because you think it is very dangerous for him. He is not a very good swimmer and he is not very brave either. You are worried. How would you persuade him to give up the idea of learning how to dive? What other sports or hobbies would you recommend him to start practising?

VOCABULARY HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

**NOUNS**
- abroad – zahraničie
- acting – hranie divadla
- adventure – dobrodružstvo
- age limit – veková hranica
- argument – dôvod
- art exhibition – umelecká výstava
- body building – kulturistika
- choir – spevácky zbor
- couple – pár, dvojica
- diving – potápanie
- DIY (do it yourself) – urob to sám
- drawing – kreslenie
- entertainment – zábava
- equipment – výstroj
- fun – zábava
- hiking – turistika
- horse riding – jazda na koni
- instrument – nárade
- leisure (time) – volný čas
- movement – pohyb
- net – sieť
- opportunity – príležitosť
- painting – maľovanie
- participant – účasník
- party of hikers – skupina turistov
- pensioner – dôchodca
- roller-skating – korčuliť
- rowing – veslava
- scuba diving – potápanie
- trainers (AmE: sneakers) – tenisky
- stamp – známka
- tool – náradie
- yachting (čítaj jótíng) – jachting

**ADJECTIVES**
- adventurous – dobrodružný
- brave – statočný
- creative – tvorivý
- indoor – vnútorný
- middle-aged – v strednom veku
- own – vlastný
- pregnant – tehotná
- retired – na dôchodku
- worried – ustarostený

**VERBS**
- to attend – navštíviť
- to be connected to – mať súvislosť s
- to collect – zbierať
- to combine – spájať
- to develop – rozvíjať
- to enjoy (company) – tešiť sa (zo spoločnosti)
- to explain – vysvetliť
- to fit – pattrí medzi, pasovať
- to force – nútiť
- to give up (the idea) – zdať sa (myslenky)
- to hate – nenávidiet
- to include – zahráť
- to join – pridať sa
- to keep (a pet) – chovať (domáce zvierá)
- to keep fit – udržiavať sa v dobrej kondícii
- to look after – dávať pozor na
- to lose weight – schudnúť
- to persuade – presvedčiť
- to play an instrument – hrať na hudobný nástroj
- to prevent – predičiť
- to undergo an operation – podstúpiť operáciu

**OTHER**
- all over the world – po celom svete
- both – obaja, obe
- either – ani
- in good company (of people) – v dobrej spoločnosti (lúdi)
- instead – namiesto
- outdoors – vonku
- quite common – celkom bežné

**PHRASES**
- Expressing opinion – vyjadrenie názoru
  I think that he/she should... Myšlim si, že on/-a by mal/-a...
  I don't think that he/she would be interested in... Because... Nemyslim si, že on/-a by sa zaujímal/-a o... pretože...

- Asking for information – získavanie informácií
  Sorry, what/who/where/why/how...? Prepáčte, čo/ktoré/kde/preháča ako...
  Excuse me, do you know...? Prepáčte, viete poznáte...
  Excuse me, could you tell me...? Prepáčte, môhli by ste mi povedať...
  I’d like to know/ask if... Chcel/a by som vedieť/spýtať sa či...
  Could you tell me how to...? Mohli by ste mi povedať, ako...
  Could you give me some information about...? Mohli by ste ma informovať o...
  I wonder if you could tell me... Mohli by ste mi povedať...

- Expressions to fill time in conversation – frázy na vyplnenie času počas konverzácie
  How should I say this? Ako to mám povedať?
  You know, I think that... Viete/Vieš, myšlím si, že...
16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

Multiculturalism and its understanding (multikultúrnost a jej chápanie)
Cultural exchanges (spoznávanie iných kultúr)
Holidays, habits and traditions (sviatky, zvyky a tradicie)
Countries and nationalities (krajiny a národnosti)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. Can you give any examples of countries with multicultural society?
2. Is Slovakia also a multicultural country?
3. What are the common problems of immigrants?

A multicultural society is a country where different cultural groups live together. They try to preserve their cultures, habits and traditions. Cultural differences should be respected and tolerated. This is the official policy in Canada, Australia and the UK. Immigrants can have dual citizenship, they can use their minority language and they can keep their culture and religion. In some countries they are expected to mix and integrate into the national culture. A typical example is the USA where immigrants preserve their own culture but also become Americans. Cultural adaptation is more difficult when immigrants have to adapt to different cultural values or religion. Lack of cultural integration can cause the isolation of immigrant minorities. This can provoke reactions of xenophobia and racism, which can lead to serious incidents.

In 2004, Slovakia became part of a larger community - the European Community. Many Slovaks decided to leave the country for study or work; a lot of them got married abroad and created bicultural families. Living in a bicultural (or cross-cultural) family requires a lot of tolerance and understanding from both sides. Practising the traditions and habits of two cultures can be a good compromise and benefit for the couple and their children. Nowadays, there are many study programmes which make student exchange possible. Students go to live and study in a culturally different country in a "host family". Such exchanges are usually very beneficial. People learn about new cultures, make friends and become tolerant.

Slovakia is also a multicultural country. The majority of Slovak population is Slovak. The country also has several minorities, the biggest of which are Hungarian, Roma, Ruthenian and Ukrainian. The Roma population in Slovakia has problems to adapt and is often a victim of racist attacks.

After reading the text, answer the following questions:
1. What does multiculturalism mean?
2. What rights do immigrants have in multicultural countries?
3. How can people profit from cultural exchanges?
4. What are the minorities living in Slovakia?

PUBLIC HOLIDAYS

Public holidays in Great Britain are called "bank holidays". All the banks, offices, schools, shops and factories are closed. Bank holidays include Easter and Christmas. Easter is a typical spring holiday. In Britain it is celebrated over several days. On Good Friday, people eat hot cross buns and on Sunday people give each other chocolate eggs. There is nothing like Slovak traditions with water and willow whips. In the USA children like this holiday very much because the Easter Bunny comes with coloured chocolate eggs and candies. At Christmas houses, shops and streets are decorated with coloured lights, Christmas trees, holly, ivy or mistletoe. Christmas carols are sung in houses, cathedrals and churches. In Slovakia carol singers mostly sing in the villages. People buy presents and send Christmas cards to their relatives and friends. In Slovakia people open their presents, which they find under the Christmas tree on December 24. In Britain children hang their stockings at the foot of the bed for Santa Claus (or Father Christmas) to fill them. In the morning on Christmas Day, December 25, children get up early to open their Christmas presents. Families have a traditional Christmas dinner: in Britain it is stuffed turkey and Christmas pudding afterwards. In Slovakia it is fish (usually carp) with potato salad. The following day is the Boxing Day (December 26) when many people visit other members of their families. In Slovakia people also visit their families on this day.

In the USA the Independence Day (July 4) is one of the most important public holidays. It celebrates the independence of American colonies from Britain. The oldest American holiday is the Thanksgiving Day. It reminds us of the first successful harvest which helped the colony at Plymouth to survive the winter. Halloween is a typical American holiday celebrated on October 31. According to an old tradition, it is a witches' holiday. It is popular with both young and old people, who dress themselves in fancy costumes and go to parties to have fun. The most famous holiday of the Irish people is the St. Patrick's Day, named after the patron saint of Ireland, who brought Christianity to Ireland. On this day, people dress in green, eat Irish food and drink Guinness. St. Patrick's parades are seen in many towns and cities in Ireland and the USA.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What are the most important public holidays in Great Britain?
2. Compare and contrast Christmas habits in Great Britain and Slovakia.
3. Which are the most famous public holidays in the USA?
4. How is St. Patrick's Day celebrated?

> **PRACTICE TASKS**

A. Which of the following words are countries and which are nationalities? Pair them.

Example: Slovakia (country) – Slovak (nationality)

Switzerland Wales China Austrian France Spanish English
Slovakia Czech Slovak Poland Dutch Greek Italy Hungarian
Italian Greece French Czech Republic Welsh Austria Swiss
Hungary the Netherlands Spain England Chinese Ireland

B. Correct the names of countries and languages in the text.

Germany

I went on holiday to Germany last year where I met some really interesting people. The first one was Mario. He was an Italy but we spoke Englang together. He was really intelligent and could speak Hungary and Spain, but he didn’t know any Slovakia. My other great friend there was Isabelle. She was France, but her mother was Poland so she could understand most of what I said. The three of us had a great time. We went to see a Russia film and then had a Greece meal. We’re hoping to meet again next year in Dutch or maybe Irish.

C. Which holidays are described below? Choose the word from the box.

Boxing Day Christmas Easter St. Patrick’s Day Independence Day New Year’s Eve Thanksgiving Day Valentine’s Day

1. It is the day of all lovers and friends. They send postcards to each other.
2. In the USA, children like this holiday very much because they get many coloured chocolate eggs and candies. This holiday usually lasts several days. In Slovakia we have traditions with water and willow whips on the Monday.

D. Which of the following customs and traditions are also typical for your region at Christmas? Describe other customs and traditions you keep in your family at Christmas.

1. We decorate our Christmas tree on December 24 in the morning.
2. We sing and listen to Christmas carols on CDs.
3. Before Christmas dinner, we read the passage from the Bible about the birth of Jesus.
4. We eat Christmas waffles filled with honey, garlic and black pepper.
5. For Christmas dinner, we eat lentil soup with dry plums and fried carp with potato salad.
6. When we finish dinner, our father rings the bell to tell us that Santa Claus (Father Christmas) has come and brought us presents.
7. At midnight, we go to church and we go to see the Bethlehem.

E. How would you celebrate Christmas if your life partner was British? Would you keep the Slovak or British traditions and habits?

- To gain time for thinking: Well, that’s very interesting. It’s difficult to say...
- To say you don’t know: I’m afraid I can’t answer this question. I actually don’t know. I have never experienced anything like that.
- To come up with some ideas: Maybe I would... It depends on... I think I would... I certainly wouldn’t... I would prefer...
SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 16  MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 196

Look at the picture of a Slovak man and his Japanese wife. Describe them and talk about the advantages and disadvantages of bicultural relationships.

Task 2

Compare how Christmas is celebrated in Britain and Slovakia. Talk about:
- the Christmas decoration,
- what people do at Christmas,
- when they get Christmas presents,
- where they find Christmas presents,
- what they eat at Christmas.

What do you like about the British way of celebrating Christmas? What do you like about the Slovak way of celebrating Christmas?

Task 3 Simulation

You are having a serious relationship with a British person. You are going to get married soon. You have to decide where you are going to live – in Britain, in Slovakia or somewhere else. If you leave Slovakia, you will lose your job and you will be far from your friends and family. However, it is the same for your partner. You know that your qualification is not sufficient to get a good job abroad. How will you decide so that both of you are happy?

VOCABULARY  MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

NOUNS
- abroad – zahraničie
- anniversary – výročie
- attack – útok
- benefit – osoh, prospech
- Bethlehem – Betlehem
- bible – biblia
- both sides – obe strany
- candles (AmE) – cukríky
- carp – kapor
- Christianity – krestanstvo
- Christmas carol – vianočné koleda
- church – kostol
- church service – bohoslužba
- couple – pár, dvojica
- custom – zvyk
- dry plums – sušené slivky
- dual citizenship – dvojité občanstvo
- Easter Bunny – veľkonočný zajac
- exchange – výmena
- factory – továrňa
- fancy costume – karnevalový kostým
- firework – ohňostroj
- habit – zvyk
- harvest – žatva
- holly – cezminá
- hot cross buns – veľkonočný bochniček
- immigrant – migrant, prištahovalec
- incident – incident
- independence – nezávislosť
- isolation – izolácia
- ivy – brečtan
- Jesus – Ježiš
- lentil soup – sošovicová polievka
- majority – väčšina
- mass – omša
- minority – menšina
- mistletoe – imelo
- parade – sprievod
- patron saint – svätost (ochranca)
- policy – politíka, konanie
- public holiday – státny sviatok
- racism – rasizmus
- region – región, oblasť
- relative – príbuzný
- religion – náboženstvo
- stocking – pančuchá
- stuffed turkey – plnený moriak
- value – hodnota
- victim – obet
- waffle – oplátká
- willow whip – koráb z víby
- witch – striga
- xenophobia – xenofóbia, chorobná nenávisť k cudzincom

Adjectives
- beneficial – prospešný
- bicultural – dvojkultúrny
- common – spoločný
- cross-cultural – medzikultúrny
- following – nasledujúci
- multicultural – mnohonárodný
- racist – rasistický
- several – zopár
- successful – úspešný
- sufficient – postačujúci

Verbs
- to adapt – prispôsobiť sa
- to celebrate – osláviť
- to compare – porovnať
- to decide – rozhodnúť sa
- to describe – opisať
- to hang – zavesiť
- to include – zahrnúť
- to integrate – integrovať, spojiť
- to join – spojiť sa, pridať sa
- to keep (traditions) – uchovávať (tradíciu)
- to lead to – vedie k

Boxing Day – (u nás Druhý sviatok vianočný)
Christmas – Vianoce
Good Friday – Veľký piatok
Easter – Veľká noc
Independence Day – Deň nezávislosťi
New Year’s Day – Nový rok (1. január)
New Year’s Eve – Silvester (31. decembra)
Thanksgiving Day – Deň vdakyvzdania
17 TOWNS AND PLACES

Important places in my life (dôležité miesta v mojom živote – rodisko, miesto studií, trávenie víkendov, prázdnin)
Guiding tourists (sprevádzanie turistov, privítanie, základné informácie o pobyt)
Interesting places for tourists (turisticke zaujímavé miesta)
Describing a place (opis miesta)
Recommendations (odporúčenia)
(pozri aj doplnkovy materiál na strane 181)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
1. What is your birthplace famous for?
2. Which are the most beautiful places in Slovakia?
3. Which are the most beautiful places in the world?

People live in different places during their life. They move from place to place for a new living, job, studies or marriage. Some people live in one place all their life. Our birthplace is the place where we were born and where our family and friends live. Many young people move when they decide to study in a different town or country. From time to time, all people leave their homes when they travel away for holidays. Some people look for quiet, peaceful places in the countryside which are far from fast and hectic life in cities. The others search for places full of adventure and excitement.

Slovaks spend their holidays either in Slovakia or abroad. When they choose to go abroad for holidays, they usually contact a travel agency. They choose a holiday resort from a catalogue and the travel agent gives them all the necessary information about the stay. During their holidays, they communicate with a guide who represents the travel agency.

There are many beautiful towns and places in the world. Some of them are surprising, inspiring and exciting. The most beautiful cities in the world are Prague, London, New York, Paris and many others. They offer many cultural events, possibilities for sightseeing, shopping in the most luxurious shops, restaurants, casinos, night clubs. The Hawaiian Islands and the Seychelles are called "paradise" places. They are preferred by those who look for exotic and relaxation. Amazon, Grand Canyon and Sahara belong to the most beautiful wild places. The wonders of the world, such as the Acropolis, the Giza Pyramids or the Great Wall and others, are perhaps the most mysterious places in the world. The most favourite destinations of the Slovaks are Croatia, Greece, Italy in summer and the Alps in winter.

Slovakia also offers many interesting places for relaxation. Beautiful sceneries, caves, waterfalls attract many domestic and foreign tourists. The High and the
**C** Describe the place where you were born by answering the questions below.

1. Where were you born?
2. Is it a village, town or city?
3. Where is it situated?
4. How big is it?
5. How many inhabitants are there?
6. What is it famous for?
7. What makes it interesting/boring?
8. What do you like about your birthplace?
9. What don't you like about it?
10. What should be built in your place?
11. What needs to be reconstructed there?
12. What cultural events are there?
13. What sport facilities are there?
14. What schooling possibilities are there?
15. What job opportunities are there?
16. Are there any attractions for tourists?

**D** Which of the following towns and places would be interesting for nature lovers, history lovers and adventure lovers? Which towns or places would you like to visit? Why?

- Prague
- Niagara Falls
- London
- the Sahara
- New York City
- the Alps
- Venice
- the Great Chinese Wall
- Paris
- the Grand Canyon
- the Amazon
- the Antarctic
- the Giza Pyramids
- Jerusalem
- the Seychelles

**E** A group of American students came to study to Slovakia. Which places from the list below would you recommend them to go to? Why?

- I would certainly take them to... because...
- I think they might be interested in...
- I am sure that they would like...
- I am not sure if they would like to...

- the High Tatras: mountaineering, hiking, skiing, cycling and horse riding
- Velká and Malá Studená Dolina: waterfalls, hiking
- Demänovská Ice Cave
- open-air thermal pool in Bešeňová
- castle in Bojnice
- Detva – the folklore festival
- Tatralandia Aqua Park
- spa in Piešťany – mud bath procedures
- Bratislava – jazz festival
Task 3 Simulation

You are a tour guide. Which places in Slovakia would you recommend to a group of American tourists who are interested in Slovak history, culture and traditions? Explain the reasons of your choice.

VOCABULARY  TOWNS AND PLACES

NOUNS
- abroad - zahraničie
- adventure - dobrodružstvo
- attraction - atrakcia
- birthplace - rodiisko
- castle - hrad, zámok
- cave - jaskyňa
countryside - vidiecky
cross-country skiing - bežkovanie
cycling - bicyklovanie
decision - rozhodnutie
derivation - vzdelanost
-event - udalosť
excitement - vzrušenie
experience - skúsenosť
facility - zariadenie
factory - továreň
guide - sprievodca
hiking - turistika
hill - kopec
holiday resort - rekreačné stredisko
horse riding - jazdectvo
inhabitant - obyvateľ
mountaineering - horolezectvo
opportunity - príležitosť
paradise - raj
relaxation - relax
scenery - scénie
sightseeing - prehliadka pamiatok
skiing - lyžovanie
spa - kúpele
swimming pool - bazén
thermal spring - termálny prameň
tourist (čiastoky) - turista; turistický
travel agency - cestovná kancelária
waterfall - vodopád
wonder - dlh. zázrak

ADJECTIVES
- agricultural - polnohospodársky
- boring - nudný
crowded - preplnený
- damaged - zničený
dangerous - nebezpečný
domestic - domácí
exciting - vzrušujúci
famous - známy
fast - rýchly
favourite - oblúbený
foreign - cudzí
hazardous - hektický, rušný
historic (event, building, monument, centre) - historický
important - dôležitý
industrial - priemyselný
inspiring - inspirovaný
loud - hlavý
luxurious - luxusný
medium-sized - stredné velký
mysterious - záhadný
necessary - potrebný
peaceful - pokojný
quiet - tichý
reconstructed - zrekonštruovaný
situated - umiestnený
small-sized - malej veľkosti
surprising - prekvapujúci
wild - divý, divoký
year-round - celoročný

VERBS
- to attract - púťať sa
- to be born - narodit' sa
- to be interested in - zaujímať sa o
- to create - vytvoriť
to decide - rozhodnúť sa

to describe - opisť

to enjoy - tešiť sa

to invite - pozvať

to leave - odcestovať

to look for - hľadať

to move - presťahovať sa

to offer - ponúkať

to prefer - uprednostňovať

to recommend - odporúčať

to search for - vyhľadávať

to take place - končať sa

- OTHER

all year round - po celý rok

either... or... - buď... alebo...

elsewhere - inde

annually - každoročne

far -daleko

from time to time - občas

perhaps - snad'

- PHRASES

Describing a place - opis miesta

This place is famous for... Toto miesto je známe pre...

It's situated in... Nachádza sa...

How to recommend interesting places to tourists - ako odporučať turistom zaújmové miesta

I would certainly recommend them...

Určite by som ich odporúčal/a...

I am sure that they would like...

Som si istý/a, že by sa mi páčil...

I think they might be interested in... Mysliť, že by sa zaújmali o...

I am not sure if they would like...

Nie som si istý/a, či by chceli...

How to invite friends to see interesting places - ako pozvať priateľov pozriť sa zaújmové miesta

Would you like to spend a weekend...

Chcel by som (a) späť namiesto...

How about visiting some interesting places...

Kto by sa rozhodol návštievne miest...

I would like to take you to...

Chcel by som (a) vás/priteľa vzít...

18 FASHION

Attitude of people towards fashion (pozitívne pohľad na módu)

weather and clothing (počasie a oblečenie)

clothes for different occasions (oblečenie na rôzne príležitosti)

taking care of clothes (starostlivosť o oblečenie)

tailored clothes versus ready-made clothes (šaty zhotovené na mieru versus hotové šaty)

giving compliments/criticising (kompromety a kritika)

Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What clothes are you wearing now?
2. Who do you dress up for?
3. Explain the old saying "Clothes make the man".

Fashion is the way people dress in a certain period of time. It changes very fast. Sometimes, it is quite difficult to say what is still trendy or what is already out of fashion. The clothes people wear tell us about their age, origin, religion, interests and financial situation. Fashion is a way of self-expression, especially for the young. They show their mood, interests, attitudes and status in society through styles, colours, patterns, materials and accessories. Most young people get dressed according to their own taste. They wear casual clothes, such as jeans, baggy trousers, loose sweatshirts and sneakers. Some young people buy brand name clothes in expensive shops and boutiques to be "in".

Clothing is connected with weather. In summer, light and airy materials, such as cotton or silk, are preferred. We wear short-sleeved or sleeveless shirts, T-shirts, loose blouses, skirts, shorts, sandals and slippers. For swimming, we wear a swimming costume. In winter, warmer materials like cotton, wool and nylon are preferred. Long-sleeved T-shirts, shirts, sweaters, jumpers, pullovers, cardigans, polo necks, jackets, anoraks, coats, gloves, hats, caps, scarves and boots are worn.

People dress differently for various occasions. Balls and banquets require formal smart clothes. Especially women take special care of being dressed-up and looking good at such occasions. They spend a lot of money on ball dresses, shoes, accessories, decorative items and jewellery (necklace, bracelet, earrings, rings). Ladies' handbags should match their dresses and shoes. Gentlemen wear a dark suit or tuxedo, a white shirt with cuff links, a single colour bow tie and dark shoes.

Not only special occasions require special clothes. In some jobs people wear uniforms, denims, white coats, costumes, aprons. In some private British schools, children have to wear uniforms to hide social and financial differences.

Another important part of our image is hair. Nowadays, there is great freedom in hairstyles and colours. Boys grow their hair long, have highlights done, while girls have their hair very short, spiky and often dyed, highlighted or bleached.
After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What does fashion reflect?
2. Why is fashion so important for some people?
3. What are the most favourite clothes among the young?
4. How is clothing connected with weather?
5. What do men and women wear for special occasions?
6. Why is hair also an important part of our image?

**PRACTICE TASKS**

**A** Put the following words into the categories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ladies's clothes</td>
<td>skirt, bleached, dress, blouses, sandals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men's clothes</td>
<td>shirt, cuff links, tuxedo, sneakers, suit, slippers, dyed earrings, necklace, highlighted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Types of shoes</td>
<td>hat, cap, shoes, boots, sneakers, jacket, coat, anorak, pullover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B** Which word does not fit into the line? Why doesn't it fit?

Example: sandals - slippers - scarf (scarf - it is not worn on the feet)

1. baggy - loose - casual - denims
2. uniform - handbag - white coat - apron
3. tie - sweater - jumper - pullover
4. anorak - coat - jacket - costume
5. cap - hat - gloves
6. silk - cotton - wool - airy
7. boots - shoes - swimming costume - sneakers
8. bracelet - ring - necklace - nylon

**C** What clothes, shoes and accessories would you wear for the following situations?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Choice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The first date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School-leaving exam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green ribbon ball</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stužková</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbecue party</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discotheque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work in the garden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D** Do the following sentences express compliments (CO) or criticism (CR)?

1. What a nice sweater!  CO
2. This blouse doesn't suit you good. CR
3. These shoes don't go well with your dress. CR
4. That's an elegant handbag. CO
5. It doesn’t match your skirt at all. CR
6. That’s a beautiful scarf. CO
7. What a good material! CO
8. What an awful pattern! CR
9. This jumper fits you fine. CO
10. This T-shirt is too tight. It doesn’t look good. CR

**E** Match the halves of the sentences together. If you do it correctly, you will get some advice how to care about your clothes.

Example: 1. a) All clothes require special care if you want to wear them for a longer time.

1. All clothes require special care if you want to wear them for a longer time.
2. Follow carefully the washing and ironing.
3. Some clothes wash easily, others require
4. If you wash your clothes in a washing machine on a high temperature,
5. Greasy stains can be washed
6. The worst happens when coloured clothes
7. If you are not sure how to care about certain clothes,

a) with stain removers.
b) they can shrink or become larger.
c) are washed together with white ones.
d) dry-cleaning or must be washed only by hand.
e) instructions on the clothes labels.

f) use the service of a local laundrette.
**SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 18  FASHION**

**Task 1**

Read the text below. Talk about why people go to tailors and dressmakers. Say what tailors have to do before the clothes fit fine.

A few years ago, the possibilities to follow fashion were quite limited in Slovakia. Shops were only selling a few models. Therefore, many women sewed the clothes themselves. Nowadays, more and more people prefer ready-made clothes to tailored ones. If women want to have a unique dress for a special occasion, such as a ball, they go to dressmakers and have their dress made. Men sometimes have their suits or coats made too. Some people go to tailors to have their old clothes repaired or adjusted to the latest fashion. Tailors take measurements of the entire body: waist, hips, sleeves and bust. Customers can choose the cut, design, material and a pattern of cloth. Before the clothes are ready, customers must try them on a few times so that they fit perfectly. The finest tailors can charge you a lot of money for designing and sewing.

**Task 2**

Talk about your attitude towards fashion. Say who you usually dress for and what you usually wear (what clothes, shoes, accessories). Describe your favourite clothes. Express your opinion about people who want to be “in” and dress according to the latest trends and not according to their own taste or style.

**Task 3  Simulation**

You are in a boutique with your mother, who wants to buy you a dress/tuxedo for your green ribbon ball (stužková). She is a bit traditional and has different taste. She doesn’t follow fashion very much and is critical about people who wear eccentric clothes. She wants to buy you conservative clothes which are not very appropriate for the young. Tell her that you’d rather choose the clothes on your own and explain why. Describe what kind of a dress/tuxedo you would like to get for your green ribbon ball.

**VOCABULARY  FASHION**

**NOUNS**

- accessories – doplnky
- advice – rada
- anorak – vetrovka
- apron – zástera
- attitude – postoj
- ball – bál, ples, zábava
- banquet – banket
- barbecue – piknik s opekaním na ražn
- beach – pláž
- blouse – blúzka
- boots – čižmy
- bow tie – motýlik (namiesto kravaty)
- bracelet – náramok
- bust – miera cez prsia
- cap – čiapka
- cardigan – sveter
- care – starostlivosť
- clothes – oblečenie
- coat – kabát
- cotton – Bavlna, vlna
- cuff links – manžetové gombíky
- cut – strih
- date – schôdza, rande
- decorative item – ozdobný predmet, doplnok
- denims – montérky
- design – strih
- dress – spoločenské oblečenie; ženské šaty
- dressmaker – dámsky krajčír (krajčírka)
- dry-cleaning – chemické čistenie
- earrings – náušnice
- freedom – sloboda
- glove – rukavica
- green ribbon ball – stužková
- hairstyle – účes
- half – polovica
- handbag – kabelka
- hat – klobúk
- highlight – melír
- hips – boky
- ironing – žehlenie
- jacket – bunda

- jewellery – šperky
- jumper – tenký sveter
- label – etiketa, štítok
- laundrette – práčovňa
- mood – náladá
- necklace – náhrdelník
- nylon (čitaj najlon) – nylon
- occasion – príležitosť
- origin – pôvod
- pattern – vzor
- polo neck – rolák
- possibility – možnosť, príležitosť
- ready-made clothes – konfekčný odev
- religion – náboženstvo
- ring – prsten
- scarf (množ. číslo: scarves) – šál, šatka
- self-expression – sebavyjadrenie
- service – služba
- shirt – košela
- shorts – krátke nohavice
- silk – hodváb
- skirt – sukňa
- sleeve – rukáv
- slippers – papuče
- sneakers – tenisky
- status – spoločenské postavenie
- suit – oblek
- sweater – sveter
- sweatshirt – tepláková bunda
- swimming costume – dámske plavky
- tailor – (pánsky) krajčír
- taste – vkus
- trousers – nohavice
- T-shirt – tričko
- tuxedo – smoking
- waist – pás
- washing – pranie
- washing machine – práčka
- way – spôsob
- white coat – biely pracovný plášť
- wool – vlna


### ADJECTIVES
- airy – vzdušný
- appropriate – vhodný
- baggy – volný, neforemený (o oblečení)
- bleached – odbarvený, zosvietený
- brand name clothes – značkové oblečenie
- casual – každodenný
- dark – tmavý
- dyed – zafarbený (o vlасoch)
- eccentric – extravaganzný
- entire (body) – celé (telo)
- greasy – mastný
- highlighted – melírovaný
- light – lahký
- local – miestny
- long-sleeved – s dlhým rukávom
- loose – volný
- short-sleeved – s krátkym rukávom
- single colour – jednofarebný
- sleeveless – bez rukávov
- smart – bystrý
- spiky – účes na žižka
- tailored – šitý na mieru
- trendy – módný
- unique – jedinečný

### VERBS
- to adjust – prispôsobiť, upraviť
- to be connected with – byť spojený s
- to care about – staráť sa o
- to charge (money) – učítať si (peniaze)
- to describe – opísť
- to dress (oneself) – oblieť sa
- to dress up – vybíjať sa
- to fit – byť dobré veľkosťou
- to follow (fashion) – sledovať, ísť podľa
- to get dressed – oblieť sa
- to grow – rást
- to hide – skryť sa
- to match – hodiť sa (k niečomu)
- to reflect – odrážať
- to repair – opraviť
- to require – vyžadovať
- to sew – šit
- to shrink – zraziť sa
- to take care of – dávať pozor, dbať na
- to take measurements – víťať miery
- to wear – nosiť oblečenie

### OTHER
- according to – podľa
- on my/your/his/her own – sám
- out of fashion – nemoderný

### PHRASES
**Giving compliments and criticizing – komplimentary a kritika**
- **What a nice sweater!** Aky pekný sveter!  
  **That’s an elegant handbag.** To je elegantná kabelka.  
  **That’s a beautiful scarf.** To je krásná šatka.  
  **What a good material!** Aky dobrý materiál!  
  **This jumper fits you fine.** Tento sveter ti je dobrý.  
  **This blouse doesn’t suit you.** Táto blúzka ti nepriplatá.  
  **These shoes don’t go well with your dress.** Tieto topánky sa ti nehodia k šatám.  
- **It doesn’t match your skirt at all.** Vôbec sa ti nehodí k sukni.  
- **What an awful pattern!** Aky hrozný vzor!  
- **This T-shirt is too tight.** Toto tričko je príliš úzke.  
- **It doesn’t look good on you.** Nevyzerá to na tebe dobre.

---

**Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.**

1. Which English-speaking countries have you been to?
2. Which English-speaking countries would you like to visit?
3. Have you ever met any British people or Americans?

---

**English is a mother tongue** for most people living in the United States of America, Canada, the United Kingdom, Ireland, Australia and New Zealand. These countries share the same language, but every one of them has its own traditions and habits.

**Great Britain comprises** England, Wales and Scotland. Together with Northern Ireland, it forms the United Kingdom. It **includes** four nations: the English, Scottish, Welsh and Irish. They **differ** in their way of life, customs, values and traditions. In England people are said to be **reserved in manners**, dress and speech. They are conservative and **stick to traditions**. They are **famous** for their **politeness**, **self-discipline**, **reliability** and for their specific **sense of humour**. It is true that the British **rarely shake** hands when they meet. They like sport, especially football, cricket, golf, tennis and **horse racing**.

**Scotland** is a country where special traditions are kept, such as playing **bagpipes** and wearing **kilts** (typical **knee-length** skirts for both men and women). There are many whisky **distilleries** with a long tradition. The Scottish people speak various dialects of English and **Gaelic**.

**Wales** is **rich** in culture and history. The **Welsh** people are known for their love of music and **poetry**. There are two languages spoken in Wales – English and Welsh, which is a Celtic language and very different from English.

**Northern Ireland** lies on the north of the island of Ireland and is a part of the United Kingdom. Most of the country is **rural** and over half of the **population** is Protestant. The **Republic of Ireland** is a **sovereign** state and is mostly Catholic. Conflicts between Protestants and Catholics are still **alive**. The Catholic community wants Northern Ireland to **join** the Republic of Ireland, whereas the Protestant community wants to **remain** part of the UK. The Irish people are **hospitable** and friendly, they like music and dancing. Social life concentrates in **pubs** where live music and drinking is very **common**.
The United States of America is home to people mostly of European origin but also of Afro-American, Native American, Japanese, Chinese and other origins. The people in the USA also speak their minority and immigrant languages. Spanish is an important language, especially in the southern states.

It is said that Americans are loud, extremely self-conscious, dressed in tasteless clothes. However, when you get to know them better, you find out that they are open, friendly, hard-working and independent. America is a wealthy country and Americans enjoy a high standard of living. However, there are also many poor people there.

It is a typical custom to teach children independence from an early age. Each adult member of a typical American family has his/her own car. Most Americans drive to work and students often drive to school. Americans like travelling and they often drive long distances through the country, especially during the holidays, to visit their friends and relatives.

Americans do not usually stay in the same town all their lives. They like to move. It is not unusual for families to move house or go to live in another town or state more than once every ten years.

Nowadays, more and more Americans take care of their health. They do some sport, eat healthier food, smoke less and drink less alcohol. Smoking is banned in some public places.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. In which countries is English spoken as the mother tongue?
2. What is the difference between the United Kingdom and Great Britain?
3. What are the English people like?
4. What do you know about the conflicts in Northern Ireland?
5. How are Americans often presented in American films?
6. What do you know about the lifestyle of an American family?

Practice tasks

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: South Africa - South African

Canada, England, Ireland, Scotland, the USA, Wales, Australia, New Zealand

B Test your knowledge in this quiz about English-speaking countries. There are four incorrect facts. Can you find and correct them?

2. The United Kingdom comprises England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.
3. London is the capital of England and of Great Britain.
4. The official currency in England is the euro.
5. Queen Elizabeth II has the main political power in the United Kingdom.
6. New Zealand is famous for its hot springs and geysers.
7. The USA is a federation of 52 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
8. New York is the capital city of the USA.
10. Australia is an island continent.

C Which English-speaking countries are these places connected with? What are they famous for?

- Grand Canyon - Buckingham Palace - Pentagon - Hollywood
- Niagara Falls - Harvard - Loch Ness - Quebec
- Sydney - Heathrow - Manhattan - Edinburgh - the Statue of Liberty - Wimbledon

D Talk about the English-speaking country you would like to visit. Say what towns or places you wish you could see and why. Would you like to live/study/work once in one of these countries? Say where and give your reasons.

- I wish I saw.../went to... because...
- I wish I lived/studied/worked...
- I would really like to see... because...
- Once, I would like to live/study/work in... because...
SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 19  ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Task 1

Look at the pictures below. Say what cities of English-speaking countries they show and what they are famous for. Say which city from the pictures below you would like to go to and explain your reasons.

the USA

Australia

England

Task 2

Compare and contrast the lifestyle of the English, Americans and Slovaks. Talk about:
- their characteristics,
- their way of life,
- hobbies,
- typical customs and traditions.

Task 3  Simulation

You are planning to go to England to study English at a summer course. Your friend wants to go to the USA for the same reason. Persuade him to go with you. Tell him/her about the country, interesting places, people, lifestyle, habits, traditions, food.
20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND

Country and its inhabitants (krajina a jej obyvatelia)
Places I would recommend to foreigners to visit (miesta, ktoré by som odporučil)
Habits and traditions (zvyky a tradície)
Describing unfamiliar words typical for a certain culture (popis neznámých, pre deň doklady typických slov)
Expressing agreement/disagreement/no opinion (vyjadrenie súhlasu/mesťa/záhodneho stanoviska)
Giving a short presentation about Slovakia (prezentácia Slovenska)

(POZRI ĎAujdolným materiál na strane 181)

1. Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.
   1. How would you describe a typical Slovak person?
   2. Which towns and places in Slovakia are the most attractive for foreign tourists?
   3. What should be done to attract more tourists to Slovakia?

The Slovak Republic is an independent state situated in Central Europe. Tourists come here to see spectacular sceneries, old towns and cities, fairytale castles, caves and spa resorts.

Foreign visitors can learn the history of the Great Moravian Empire or the Austrian-Hungarian Monarchy. They are also interested in the events of the Velvet Revolution in November 1989. Nowadays, they visit an independent country, which is a member of the European Union.

There are many interesting places to visit in Slovakia. There are several national parks and protected natural resorts, such as the High Tatras, the Low Tatras, the Slovak Paradise and others. The High Tatras is situated in the north of Slovakia and it creates a natural border between Slovakia and Poland. Its highest peaks are Gerlachovský štít (2,655 m), Lomnický štít (2,632 m) and Kriváň (2,494 m). The High Tatras also famous for its valleys and lakes (Štrbské pleso). The High Tatras National Park is Slovakia’s largest. With its natural beauties, this area attracts many tourists all the year round. The Slovak Paradise is a romantic and picturesque region located in the north-east. There are beautiful caves, waterfalls but also vast plains with fascinating views of the area. Dobšinská ľadová jaskyňa, located in the west part of this valley, is the oldest ice cave in Europe.

Bratislava, the capital of Slovakia, is a political, cultural and industrial centre of the country. The larger towns of Slovakia include Košice, Prešov, Nitra, Žilina and Banská Bystrica. The smaller towns are visited by tourists because of their rich cultural history and beautiful architecture. Banská Štiavnica is known for its mining

history. The largest wooden altar in the world, made by Master Paul in the early 16th century, made Levoča famous. Other small Slovak towns, for example Bojnice, Trenčín, and many others, are famous for their beautiful castles. The Spiš Castle, the largest medieval castle in Central Europe and Vlkolinec, a mountain village, are included in the UNESCO World Cultural Heritage List.

The Slovaks keep their folklore traditions through traditional costumes, songs and dances. The most typical food is bryndzové halušky (gnocchi with sheep cheese) and typical alcoholic drinks are borovica (juniper gin) and beer. The Slovaks are also famous for being patriots. They have a positive attitude to their country.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.
1. What does Slovakia offer to foreign tourists?
2. Which historic events are the most important for Slovaks?
3. What national parks are there in Slovakia?
4. Which towns and villages are interesting for foreign tourists? Why?
5. What food and drinks are typical for Slovakia?
6. When did Slovakia join the European Union?

☐ PRACTICE TASKS

A Which word does not fit into the line? Why not?

Example: castles – spa resorts – caves – beer (beer does not fit because it is not a place to see)

1. scenery – waterfalls – rivers – lakes

2. castle – village – capital – town – city

3. mountain – hill – peak – traditions

4. spectacular – picturesque – fascinating – view

5. songs – dances – costumes – patriots

6. caves – typical – traditional – famous
B The following words are difficult to translate to English because they are connected with Slovak culture, habits and traditional food. Try to describe some of them to your classmates without telling them which word you are describing. Your classmates will guess.

koliba bryndzové halušky veľkonočná obliečka valaška fújara cimbalo skanzen krpe lokše parenica

It is the thing which is used for... It is made of... It looks like...
It is the food which is...
It is the place where...
It is when... For example...

C What is true and false about the Slovaks? Express your opinion.

To agree with: That’s exactly what I think. I can’t agree more.
To disagree with: I’m sorry but I can’t agree. I don’t think so.
Neutral answers: I think that it depends on... I am not sure about it.

1. Slovaks are hospitable, hard-working and willing to help others.
2. Slovaks underestimate themselves and lack self-esteem.
3. Slovak parents help their children a lot even when they grow up.
4. Slovaks move a lot from place to place.
5. Slovak men do a lot of housework.

D Give a short presentation to a group of English exchange students who want to have basic information about Slovakia and who want to get some recommendations.

OPEN THE PRESENTATION: Dear students, welcome to Slovakia, my homeland. I would like to tell you some facts about my country and recommend you some interesting places to visit.

GIVE THE PRESENTATION: Slovakia is an independent state situated in (say where). Its rich historical background attracts many tourists who want to learn about (say which historic events). Slovakia is a favourite tourist destination for nature lovers. There are several national parks (say where) and protected places which offer (say what). Tourists come here all the year round because (say why). The most famous castles are (say which ones). I would certainly recommend you to see (say which castle). There are many beautiful towns here. I personally like (say which town) because (say why). If you want to try typical Slovak food, you should have (say what food) and drink (say what). Slovak people are very (say what they are like).

CLOSE THE PRESENTATION: At the end, I would like to wish you a pleasant stay in Slovakia. I hope that you will see (say what) and meet (say who).

---

Task 1

Look at the pictures below. Say how you would introduce Slovakia through these pictures to foreigners who have never been there.

---

Task 2

Talk about the most interesting towns and places in Slovakia. Which of them would you recommend to nature lovers/history lovers/shopping lovers to visit?
Task 3 Simulation

Your English friend is coming to visit you and your family. This will be his/her first time in Slovakia. He/she wants to know something about the people, their lifestyle and manners. Tell him what the Slovaks are like and how they live.

**VOCABULARY SLOVAKIA - MY HOMELAND**

**NOUNS**
- advice - rada
- altar - oltár
- attitude - postoj (k niečomu)
- background - pozadie
- border - hranica
- capital - hlavné mesto
- cave - jaskyňa
- century - storočie
- event - udalosť
- exchange student - výmenný študent
- gnocchi - čítaj ňôki - halušky
- homeland - vlast
- juniper gin - borošička
- lake - jazer
- mining - baníctvo
- north - sever
- patriot - vlastenec
- peak - vrch
- presentation - prezentácia
- scenery - scéna
- self-esteem - sebaúcta
- sheep cheese - bryndza
- spa resort - kúpeľné stredisko
- stay - pobyt
- traditional costume - kroj
- valley - údolie
- waterfall - vodopád

**ADJECTIVES**
- attractive - príťažlivý
- basic - základný
- fairytale - rozprávkový, krásny
- false - nepravdivý
- fascinating - fascinujúci
- foreign - cudzí, zahraničný
- hard-working - pracovitý
- hospitable - pohostinný
- important - dôležitý
- independent - nezávislý, samostatný
- located - situovaný
- medieval - stredoveký
- picturesque - malebný
- pleasant - prijatný
- protected - chránený
- several - niekoľko
- situated - umiestnený
- spectacular - veľkolepý
- true - pravdivý
- vast - široký, rozľahlý
- willing to - ochotný
- wooden - drevený

**VERBS**
- to attract - pritákať, pritiahnuť (turistov)
- to behave - správať sa
- to create - vytvoriť
- to describe - opisáť
- to fit - hodliť sa
- to grow up - vyrást
- to guess - hádať
- to include - zahrniť
- to introduce - predstaviť
- to keep traditions - dodržiavať tradície
- to lack - mať nedostatok, chýbať

**OTHER**
- all the year round - po celý rok
- through - cez

**PHRASES**

**Describing unknown/culturally typical words**
- popis neznámých, pre danú kultúru typických slov

- it is the thing which is used for... Je to vec, ktorá sa používa na...
- it is made of... Je vyrobený z...
- it looks like... Vyzera to ako...
- it is the food which is... To je jedlo, ktoré...
- it is the place where... To je miesto, kde...
- it is when... Je to keď...

**Giving a short presentation about Slovakia**
- prezentácia Slovenska

1. OPEN THE PRESENTATION (ako začať prezentáciu)
   - Dear students, welcome to...
   - Milí studenti, vitajte...
   - I would like to tell you some facts about...
   - Rád/a by som vám povedať/a zopár faktov o...

2. GIVE THE PRESENTATION (obsah prezentácie)

3. CLOSE THE PRESENTATION (ako skončiť prezentáciu)
   - At the end, I would like to wish you...
   - Nakoniec by som vám chcel/a zažádajť...
   - I hope that you will... Dúfam, že bude-te...

I can't agree more. Víc nemôžem súhlasit.
To disagree with - vyjadrenie nesúhlasu
I'm sorry, but I can't agree. Je mi líto, ale nemôžem súhlasit.
I don't think so. Nemyslím si to.
Neutral answers - neutrálné odpovede
I think that it depends on... Myšľím si, že to záleží na...
I am not sure about it. Nie som si tým istý.
KEY

klůč k ústnej časti

1 FAMILY

2 CULTURE AND ARTS

3 SPORTS AND GAMES
A. Individual sports: triathlon, tennis, squash, marathon running, 100 metres, golf, cross country skiing, badminton. Played in teams: rugby, handball, ice hockey, cricket, basketball, baseball.
B. Sample answers: 1. skating, figure skating, ice hockey - 2. tennis - 3. gymnastics, basketball, volleyball, fitness, aerobics - 4. swimming - 5. skiing, cross-country skiing, ski jumping, snowboarding, tobogganing - 6. squash
C. 1. squash - 2. ice hockey - 3. basketball - 4. tennis
E. g. b. d. a. 5. e. 6. f

5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES
A. 1. baker's - 2. butcher's - 3. greengrocer's - 4. chemist's - 5. clothes shop, boutique
B. Shop assistant: 2, 4, 5, 8, 10, 12
Customer: 1, 3, 6, 7, 9, 11

6 HEALTH CARE
C. Doctor: 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13
Patient: 2, 5, 6, 8, 12

7 TRAVELLING
A. car - highway - ship - seaport - plane - airport - train - railway station - coach - bus station - fast
B. expensive - cheap - boring - exciting - dangerous - safe - polluted - clean - slow - fast
C. expensive - more expensive - the most expensive - boring - more boring - the most boring - dangerous - more dangerous - the most dangerous - polluted - the most polluted - slow - slower - the slowest - fast - faster - the fastest - exciting - more exciting - the most exciting - safe - safer - the safest - cheap - cheaper - the cheapest - clean - cleaner - the cleanest

8 EDUCATION
C. secondary school, training centres, school attendance, school subjects, school exam, school activities, school teams, school centres, school entrance, compulsory attendance, compulsory subjects, compulsory exam, compulsory activities, entrance exam, extracurricular activities, sport centres, sport school, sport activities, sport teams

9 JOBS

10 PEOPLE AND NATURE
B. good weather: 1, 4, 6 - bad weather: 2, 3, 5

11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY
A. good manners: tolerant, friendly, sympathetic, respectful, polite, generous, helpful, reliable, willing - bad manners: angry, impolite, rude, loud, egoistic, selfish, cruel
B. polite: 1, 4, 8, 10 - impolite: 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 9
14 FOOD
D compliments: 1, 6
    criticism: 2, 3, 4, 5
E waiter: 1, 5, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14
    customer: 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11

15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE
A Individual hobbies: collecting stamps, skateboarding, horse riding, playing the piano, body building, gardening, reading, photography, DIY.
    Collective hobbies: choir singing, aerobics.
    Both: dance, tennis, hiking, yachting, diving.

16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY
A countries: Sweden, Wales, China, France, Slovakia, Poland, Italy, Greece, Czech Republic, Austria, Hungary, the Netherlands, Spain, England, Ireland.
    nationalities: Austrian, Spanish, English, Czech, Slovak, Dutch, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, French, Welsh, Swiss, Chinese.
B I went on holiday to Germany last year where I met some really interesting people. The first one was Mario. He was an Italian but we spoke English together. He was really intelligent and could speak Hungarian and Spanish, but he didn't know any Slovak. My other great friend there was Isabelle. She was French, but her mother was Polish so she could understand most of what I said. The three of us had a great time. We went to see a Russian film and then had a Greek meal. We're hoping to meet again next year in the Netherlands or maybe Ireland.

18 FASHION
A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ladies' clothes</th>
<th>skirt</th>
<th>blouse</th>
<th>dress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>men's clothes</td>
<td>tuxedo</td>
<td>suit</td>
<td>shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>types of shoes</td>
<td>sneakers</td>
<td>sandals</td>
<td>slippers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accessories</td>
<td>cuff links</td>
<td>earrings</td>
<td>necklace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>bleached</td>
<td>dyed</td>
<td>highlighted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D compliments: 1, 4, 6, 7, 9
    criticism: 2, 3, 5, 10
E 1, 2, D  3, F  4, E  5, B  6, C  7, G

19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES
A Canada – Canadian  England – English  Ireland – Irish  Scotland – Scottish  the USA – American  Wales – Welsh  Australia – Australian  New Zealand – New Zealand
B Incorrect facts:
    4. The official currency in England is the euro.
    5. Queen Elizabeth II has the main political power in the United Kingdom.
    7. The USA is a federation of 52 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
    8. New York is the capital city of the USA.
    Corrected facts:
    4. The official currency in England is the **pound**.
    5. Queen Elizabeth II has **little** real political power in the United Kingdom because the United Kingdom is governed by the Cabinet with 20 ministers and the Prime Minister.
    7. The USA is a federation of **50 states** including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
    8. **Washington** is the capital city of the USA.
C Grand Canyon – the USA  Buckingham Palace – England
    Pentagon – the USA  Hollywood – the USA  Niagara Falls – the USA/Canada
    Harvard – the USA  Loch Ness – Scotland
    Quebec – Canada  Sydney – Australia  Heathrow – England
    Manhattan – the USA  Edinburgh – Scotland
    the Statue of Liberty – the USA  Wimbledon – England

20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND
LISTENING TASKS
úlohy na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením plus prepis nahrávok

TASK 1 (7 points) TRACK 22
Vypočítajte si prednášku lekára, ktorý hovorí o správnych stravovacích návykoch. Na základe vypočutého si vyberte správnu odpoveď zo štyroch možností. Správna je len jedna z možností. Text si vypočítajte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 - 7.

1. Improving your eating habits can give you __________________________.
A good feeling
B little time
C better figure
D health

2. Eating all four food groups is __________________________.
A necessary for the body
B not important
C a good combination
D healthy

3. Cereals, bread and pasta belong to the food group called __________________________.
A vegetables
B grains
C milk products
D meats

4. Vitamin A and folacin can be found in __________________________.
A orange and dark green vegetables
B orange vegetables only
C dark green vegetables only
D oranges only

5. Lower-fat milk products __________________________.
A do not give you enough energy
B do not give you enough
C give you enough protein
D give you enough proteins and calcium

6. Vegetarians should eat enough __________________________.
A vegetables to be healthy
B lentils and beans
C meat and beans
D meat and lentils

7. If you eat enough starch and fibre, __________________________.
A your body will store less of the fat
B you will improve your eating habits
C your body increases the amount of the fat
D you will feel better

Prepis textu nájdete na strane 144.

WHITE PALACE HOTEL RESERVATION FORM

**GUEST DETAILS**

Name: Mr. ___

Address: 235W West 23rd St., New York, NY 10011, USA

Car Reg. Number: ___

**ROOM DETAILS**

From: Friday 23rd April Number of Nights: ___

Room: (tick as appropriate) Single □ Double □ Twin □

Room number: ___

7. All the rooms are given a free copy of the Times newspaper.
   A true       B false
8. The guest is not happy with the service she has been given.
   A true       B false

**TASK 3 (8 points) TRACK 26**


1. The guest wants to be woken at 7.00 in the morning.
   A true       B false
2. The guest has a meeting at 7.30.
   A true       B false
3. The guest does not want to have breakfast in her room.
   A true       B false
4. Breakfast is normally available until nine o’clock.
   A true       B false
5. The guest would like to have an earlier breakfast.
   A true       B false
6. The hotel will provide tomato juice for the guest’s husband’s breakfast.
   A true       B false

**TASK 4 (7 points) TRACK 28**


1. Betty has ________________
   A one sister and no brother       C no brothers or sisters
   B one brother and no sister       D no parents
2. Betty’s problems at school started when ________________
   A her father got a new job       C she stopped going to school
   B her teacher introduced her as Betty D her parents got divorced
3. Betty’s classmates are ________________
   A her best friends               C her bullies
   B her neighbours                 D only girls
4. Betty’s classmates ________________
   A make fun of her               C give her some money
   B ignore her                    D make many funny things
5. Betty’s mother would not ________________
   A believe Betty                 C help Betty
   B bully Betty                   D talk to Betty
6. Betty’s teachers have been ________________
   A kind                          C impatient
   B unhelpful                     D tolerant
7. Betty’s teachers talked to Betty’s mother about ________________
   A her school attendance         C her mood
   B her behaviour                 D her school absence and homework
**TASK 5 (8 points) TRACK 30**


1. The tourist is from Manchester in England.
   A true   B false

2. She first came to Slovakia at Easter, three years ago.
   A true   B false

3. She said that she doesn’t know anyone else from Britain who had visited Slovakia.
   A true   B false

4. She said that many people in Britain live in high-rise flats.
   A true   B false

5. In Britain people normally have flowers instead of vegetables in their gardens.
   A true   B false

6. The tourist can speak Slovak quite well now.
   A true   B false

7. She says that she hasn’t been to Bratislava or Nitra.
   A true   B false

8. She has also visited Poland and Hungary.
   A true   B false

**TASK 7 (8 points) TRACK 34**


**Estate Agent:** Here we are, the 1._________ storey, flat number six.

**Customer:** It’s a long way up. Isn’t there a 2._________ ?

**Estate Agent:** There is, but it is being... erm... being repaired today. Well, let’s have a look 3._________ the flat. So what do you think?

**Customer:** Well, it doesn’t seem very big. In the 4._________ it was described as “a luxury penthouse suite”. This looks more like a large broom cupboard.

**Estate Agent:** Well, flats round here are more 5._________. This flat is much bigger than the others in the building.

**Customer:** Where’s the 6._________ ?

**Estate Agent:** Erm... Well, there are some wonderful 7._________ in the area.

**Customer:** And the bathroom?

**Estate Agent:** That is the beauty of this apartment; everything is in the same room. Lift up the bed, you’ll find the bath underneath! So are you 8._________ in renting it?
**TASK 8 (8 points) TRACK 36**


1. This is Jana's second visit to England.
   A true  
   B false

2. She has been working as an au pair during her time in England.
   A true  
   B false

3. The family she was working for have just moved to London.
   A true  
   B false

4. The family have a four-year-old boy and twins.
   A true  
   B false

5. Jana has looked after her nephew and niece in Slovakia.
   A true  
   B false

6. Jana wants to stay in Slovakia until the autumn.
   A true  
   B false

7. She wants to study English and German.
   A true  
   B false

8. Jana's employer will give her a reference.
   A true  
   B false

**TASK 9 (5 points) TRACK 38**

Vypočújte si dialóg medzi predavačom a zákazníkom, ktorý má záujem o kúpu automobilu. Na základe vypočutého doplňte chýbajúce slová v nižšie uvedenom texte. V odpovedi použite len jedno slovo. Text si vypočújte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie textu.

Our car shop offers you 1________________ cars. For example, the E-type Jaguar is our latest 2________________. We recommend it as a family car because there is enough space for 3________________ people. The B-type Jaguar is also suitable as a family car and it is not so 4________________ now. We also sell some Renults, which I think are not very 5________________.

**TASK 10 (5 points) TRACK 40**

Vypočújte si znova predchádzajúci dialóg. Na základe vypočutého si vyberte jednu správnu odpoved. Text si vypočújte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úlohu 1 - 5.

1. The customer wants to buy ____________
   A a family car
   B a petrol car
   C a sporty car
   D a bike

2. The customer is not interested in ____________ because it is too expensive for him.
   A Renault
   B Octavia
   C Jaguar
   D Peugeot

3. The shop assistant doesn't recommend Renault because he thinks that
   ____________
   A it is a bad car
   B it is not comfortable
   C it is not reliable
   D it is too expensive

4. The shop assistant thinks that the new model of Renault is
   ____________
   A very expensive
   B not too expensive
   C a bit expensive
   D not cheap

5. The customer is interested in ____________
   A reliable cars
   B cheap cars
   C new models
   D big cars
Tapescripts – prepis nahrávok

**TASK 1**  **TRACK 23**

**Eat Healthy! Stay Healthy!**

Improving your eating habits can have a very positive effect on the way you feel.

There are four basic food groups: grains, vegetables, milk products and meats. Each of the groups is necessary and it is very important to have a good balance between the above food groups.

Grains include cereals and bread – but choose the whole-grain varieties, such as wholegrain pasta and bread.

Dark green and orange vegetables as well as orange fruits are full of key nutrients, such as vitamin A and folacin.

Try lower-fat milk products more often. These products have less fat and calories but still give you the quality protein and calcium needed for healthy body and bones.

It is also important to have foods from the meats group, but vegetarians do not need to worry – they can replace meat with lentils, beans and pulses.

Try to choose leaner meat and cook it in ways that reduce the amount of fat – baking, broiling, roasting or microwaving. Your body will store less of the fat if you eat more starch and fibre. So have some baked beans, pea soup or a lentil casseroles.

**TASK 2**  **TRACK 25**

A: Good morning, sir. How can I help you?
B: I was wondering if you had any rooms available for the next few days.
A: We’re almost fully booked at the moment, but I can have a look for you. What sort of room do you require?
B: I’d like to book a double room, please.
A: Certainly, sir. For how many nights?
B: Three – today, tomorrow and Sunday.
A: Would you like an en-suite room?
B: Yes, that would be excellent.
A: You’re lucky, sir, we have just one left, room number 347. Can I take your name, please?
B: Phelps. P-H-E-L-P-S, Phelps.
A: Thank you. And your first name?
B: David.
A: Do you have a car with you, Mr. Phelps?
B: Yes.
A: We have free parking at the back of the hotel, but I’ll need to take your registration number.
B: Of course. It’s V 999 JKA.
A: Thank you. If you could fill in the rest of this form, then I’ll get the porter to show you to your room.

**TASK 3**  **TRACK 27**

A: Reception. How can I help?
B: Room 347 here. Would it be possible to book a wake up call for the morning?
A: Of course, madam, for what time?
B: Well, I have a meeting at half past eight, so perhaps seven o’clock would be best.
A: Certainly, madam. Would you like breakfast in your room?
B: Erm… No, it’s all right. I’ll come down for breakfast. What time is it available?
A: From 7.30 till 9. But we can arrange for an earlier breakfast if you require it.
B: No, 7.30 is fine. My husband normally has tomato juice with his breakfast, he would really be pleased if it was possible.
A: No problem, madam. I’ll speak to the chef and we’ll have some ready each morning.
B: Is it also possible to have a morning paper delivered?
A: Yes. We provide all the rooms with a complimentary copy of the Telegraph each morning. If you would prefer a different paper, we can order it for you.
B: Could I have a copy of the Times, as well, please?
A: Yes, madam. Is there anything else I can help you with?
B: No, thank you. You’ve been very helpful.

**TASK 4**  **TRACK 29**

I’m 15 years old and I’m an only child. My mother got a new job last year, so we moved to a new area where I started a new school. My problems started there. My teachers brought me to class and introduced me as “Betty”. From the very first day, everybody started to call me “Fatty”. I have to admit that I am bigger than other girls my age...

The kids at school never accepted me. I have no friends there and nobody ever speaks to me. They just make fun of me. Sometimes they gang up and attack me. They rip up my exercise books, steal my personal things and money.

I’ve never told my mum. She wouldn’t believe me. My teachers know I am bullied but never do anything to stop it. It’s the end of the school year now and the teachers have complained to my mum that I often miss classes and I don’t do my homework. I have no friends, nobody talks to me. I hate school.

**TASK 5**  **TRACK 31**

A: Excuse me, madam. Do you have a few minutes spare?
B: Yes, I do.
A: Err… Where are you from?
B: I’m from Manchester, England.
A: When did you first visit Slovakia?
B: I came two years ago at Easter.
A: Do many people from your country visit Slovakia?
B: No, I don’t know any that have been.
A: What is the biggest difference between your country and Slovakia?
B: I think the way that you live. You tend to live in high-rise flats with a nice country cottage; we just live in one house and concentrate on that. And I think your gardens are very different. We have lawns and flowers; you have vegetables.

A: Have you found the language difficult to understand?

B: The first time I came I found it very, very difficult, but this time I'm understanding more of the speech, but I still can't say anything.

A: Have you travelled much around Slovakia?

B: Yes, erm... I've been to the Tatras. I've been to Bratislava, Nitra, Orava and I've also been into Poland and Hungary.

A: Is there anything here you would like to recommend to other tourists?

B: Yes, I think the castles.

**TASK 6**

**TRACK 33**

A: Have you visited many of the castles here in Slovakia?

B: Yes, on my first visit I went to Boinice, then this time I've been to Devin and Orava.

A: Which has been the most interesting?

B: Oh... Orava, I think.

A: Why did you particularly like this castle?

B: Well, the tour was very well done. It's a very high castle and at each level there was some form of entertainment for us. There was falconry, a theatre performance, erm... very light-hearted weapons demonstration and there was some classical music. Erm... I found it really very interesting.

A: Do you have similar castles in your country?

B: Well, our castles are different. Erm... They're very beautiful and they're very interesting, but they are different.

A: If a Slovak was visiting your country, which castles would you recommend for a visit and why?

B: Erm... Undoubtedly Edinburgh. It's built on a hill opposite the main shopping street and Edinburgh itself is a fantastic city. Erm... I think that's my favourite and it has things to offer, like the military tattoo which is on in August. That is my favourite, I think.

A: But, I also think Windsor Castle is beautiful. For me it's very special because it houses Queen Mary's dolls' house and I have a particular interest in things like that. It's set in beautiful countryside; it's easily accessible and it's very different from anything in Slovakia.

B: Thank you very much for your time and I hope you enjoy the rest of your stay.

A: Thank you.

**TASK 7**

**TRACK 35**

**Estate Agent:** Here we are, the fifth storey, flat number six.

**Customer:** Oh! It's a long way up. Isn't there a lift?

**Estate Agent:** There is, but it is being... erm... being repaired today. Well, let's have a look inside the flat.

**Customer:** OK.

**Estate Agent:** So what do you think?

**Customer:** Well, it doesn't seem very big. In the advertisement it was described as "a luxury penthouse suite". This looks more like a large broom cupboard.

**Estate Agent:** Well, flats round here are more expensive. This flat is much bigger than the others in the building.

**Customer:** Where's the kitchen?

**Estate Agent:** Erm... Well, there are some wonderful restaurants in the area.

**Customer:** And the bathroom?

**Estate Agent:** That is the beauty of this apartment; everything is in the same room. Lift up the bed, you'll find the bath underneath! So, are you interested in renting it?
**LANGUAGE IN USE**

**úlohy na precvičenie anglickej gramatiky**

**Task 11 (20 points)**


**THE INTERNET**

The Internet presents a true revolution in ________ (A) ________ areas of our life. It has changed the way we study, work, entertain or communicate ________ family, friends, business partners and people we do not know. It saves our time and money to find any ________ . Nowadays, we do not have to use the phone ________ to find out about departures of trains, ________ hours or details about products or services. We do not depend on encyclopedias or dictionaries to find information. Internet search engines and online books and dictionaries are gradually replacing ________.

It is becoming a must for companies and different institutions and organisations ________ their own website. ________ professions or services depend on the Internet. Via the Internet we ________ documents, buy things, book hotels, reserve tickets, transfer our money or find life partners.

_______ days, more and more people use e-mail to communicate and send information or documents. Many Slovaks use the Internet ________ a form of entertainment. They can ________ find articles about matters they are interested ________ , download music or even films. Copyright is often misused on the Internet. Confidential material, films or music clips appear on the Internet without ________ permission to use it freely. Chatting, joining different discussion groups and reading blogs is becoming very popular, especially ________ the young.

Access to the Internet has also ________ easier in our country. Most schools, companies and institutions have access to ________ . The high number of Inter-
net providers has decreased the 17 of using the Internet. It is becoming 18 that Slovaks also have access to the Internet at home.

Much discussion concerning the safety of the Internet has been going on in the last 19 years. The safety of personal information and the safety of bank transfers are the most discussed topics. Many hackers get into different computer systems and misuse the data. They also create computer viruses which 20 destroy the data completely.

**Task 12 (10 points)**

**Example:** Badminton is an 2 enjoyable sport for all-round fitness.

- It can be played by two or four 1 .
- You can start to play from a fairly low level of fitness and 2 .
- If you haven’t played it yet, or you need more practice, then the 3 thing is to choose partners whose level of fitness and skill is similar to your own.
- 4 and weight do not matter so much.
- There are over 3 500 clubs in the UK, many of which invite 5 to join in the fun and offer 6 coaching.
- Badminton’s a very 7 game.
- Your 8 sports centre may have badminton facilities, so give them a call and book a court. The game will give you sense of 9 and 10 .

**Task 13 (10 points)**


**Example:** I 6 (live) have lived in my new house for about three years.

- I used to live in a block of flats in the middle of the town, but I 1 (find) that extremely noisy. However, it 2 (be) very convenient – especially for evenings out. My new house 3 (make) my sister quite jealous. When I moved in, she said that she would have to find a place of her own. She 8 (live) 9 in a flat with some friends when she...
Task 14 (20 points)

Prečítajte si text o americkom prázdňovom kempu pre deti (Camp America), v ktorom sú vynechané slová (1 – 20). Vyberte jednu zo štyroch možností, o ktorej si myslite, že je správna. Správna je len jedna možnosť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

CAMP AMERICA

Camp America provides American children \( ^3 \text{(C)} \) a productive way of spending their summer vacation. It also provides a great opportunity \( ^1 \) employment for students from all the world. Each year around seven \( ^2 \) children are taken care of in over 10 000 camps across the USA. Most of \( ^3 \) camps have permanent buildings for sleeping, eating and theatrical performances. Workers in the camps \( ^4 \) take on a variety of roles. Counsellors are workers \( ^5 \) entertain the children. Specialist counsellors are responsible for such activities \( ^6 \) horse-riding, drama, tennis or crafts. It is \( ^7 \) but rewarding work, with the counsellors living in \( ^8 \) same cabins as the children and strict rules (smoking and alcohol are not \( ^9 \). The role requires someone who is patient, \( ^10 \) and good with children. There \( ^11 \) also support roles, such as cooking and cleaning – Campower. The work is long and hard (up to 12 hours \( ^12 \) day), but they have an opportunity to learn new skills. For many, no \( ^13 \) is required. There are also a number of specific roles \( ^14 \) require some experience, such as car maintenance \( ^15 \) horse care. The Campower workers have a little more spend-
**Task 15 (10 points)**

Prečtěte si nasledující text. Slovesá v závorkách dajte do správného gramatického tvaru. Podla kontextu použijte buď jednoduchý přítomný čas (I DO), jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID), přeběhový minulý čas (I WAS DOING) alebo pasivum jednoduchého minulého času (...WAS/WERE DONE). Postupujte podle příkladu.

*Example:* When I *(move)* moved to England, I was surprised at all the differences in the customs.

Christmas *(be)* a great shock to me. When I *(go)* went out to the shops, I couldn't find any live fish anywhere, instead all the shops were stocked with turkeys. Christmas Eve was disappointing for me. I *(wait)* waited for everything to happen on the 24th December, but no one seemed to be preparing anything. The family *(decorate)* decorated their Christmas Tree at the beginning of December. I *(sit)* sat in the kitchen while the family was doing their last minute Christmas shopping. I was waiting to start cooking the Christmas dinner. My presents *(prepare)* prepared under the Christmas tree.

Finally, the mother of the family *(explain)* explained — in Britain everyone *(open)* opens their presents on 25th December in the morning and then have a Christmas lunch together. If I *(come)* came next year, I will be better prepared. I can say that I *(prefer)* prefer our customs.

**Task 16 (20 points)**

Prečtěte si nasledující text. Slovesá v závorkách dajte do správného gramatického tvaru. Podla kontextu použijte buď jednoduchý přítomný čas (I DO), jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID), přeběhový minulý čas (I WAS DOING) alebo pasivum jednoduchého minulého času (...WAS/WERE DONE). Postupujte podle příkladu.

*NICK’S FIRST JOB*

*Example:* Hi! My name *(be)* is Nick.

1. *(finish)* finished grammar school two years ago. I *(want)* wanted to study at university but they *(not/accept)* not accepted.
Leprechaun has his own pot of gold which gives him powers. When you take a leprechaun’s pot of gold from him, he must grant you three wishes before it back — but be careful as the leprechauns will still try to trick you with your wishes. If it rains, the leprechaun takes out his pot of gold and washes it in the rain, he lets it dry in the sun, and when the sun reflects back into the sky, causes a rainbow. This is many parents explain the rainbow phenomenon to children, and it is often possible, after a storm, to see a group of children in wellington boots and raincoats marching across fields looking the end of the rainbow and a pot of gold.

Leprechauns are bringers of good luck and to see one means luck for the rest of life. Most Irish people have a leprechaun symbol in some shape or form — usually a ceramic figure, a stuffed toy, a picture or a decorated ornament. I have a mug with a leprechaun motif and the motto “May the luck of the Irish be always with you!”

---

**Task 18 (10 points)**

V texte sú vynechané slová (1 - 10). Slová v pravom stĺpci vložte do vied v správnom tvare. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

**Example:** I have still not finished my studies.

My cousin, Pete, from university last year. I was really quite surprised that he managed to pass all his because I never saw him studying. He applied for postgraduate study, but unfortunately he was not . He even considered trying some universities, but they would be too expensive. Instead he has been looking for some , but unfortunately, he still has not found any. He has sent out lots of letters, so I hope that he will find something soon.

It is quite for me because I should be finishing my next year and I will be in the same position as him.

---

**Task 19 (10 points)**

Prečítejte si nasledujúci text. Slovesá v zátvorkách dajte do správneho grama-

**Example:** I normally *(wake up)* wake up just before seven o’clock.
That (give) me just enough time to have a shower and breakfast before my 7.45 train. I (hate) travelling to work by train. It's always very overcrowded and I only occasionally get a seat. Last week I (catch) the 7.15 train which was less crowded. To be honest, I (not, have) the discipline to wake up at 6.30 every morning!

Usually, everyone else is in the office before me, but I normally finish later. A month ago, we (start) a difficult advertising campaign. The office (be) in the centre of Birmingham so I often (go) out for lunch with my colleagues. I (begin) working for Abbott and Abbott two years ago. I (feel) that I am bored of the routine. That is the reason why I have decided to find a new job. I (hope) that I will find one.

Task 20 (8 points)


Example: Thirty per cent of 6 Americans aged four to thirty bite their nails.

1. show that nail-biting can cause many 2. problems connected with teeth, such as 3. of the tooth and trauma to the gums. Spread of skin 4. from the hands to the mouth is also very 5. .

Tommy Hopkins, a nine-year-old boy, made complaints to his dentist about the 6. in his gums. During a check-up his dentist noticed that Tommy had a 7. nail-biting habit. The dentist then explored the swollen area in his mouth and found a piece of nail stuck in the gums. Certainly these cases add scientific 8. to parents when they say “Don’t bite your nails.”

Task 21 (7 points)


Example: It was my dream 0 – 1.

I wanted to go there to visit two friends of mine. They have been working there as au pairs for six months. My friends advised me to fly 1 – 2. That was the best way for me to travel. I had never flown before, so I was quite nervous.

Whenever my family goes on holiday, we always forget to take something with us. Once, my brother forgot to take his camera. Then, my grandparents 2 – 3. This time I forgot my passport. When I arrived at the airport, the woman at the check-in desk asked me for the passport. I couldn’t 3 – 4. I had to leave the queue and then phone home. My mum answered and told me that I had left the passport on the hall table. Luckily, she had asked Aunt Lucy to bring it to me at the airport. She gave me 4 – 5. Just as I was dialling the number, a large customs officer tapped me on the shoulder. I turned round, quite frightened. He asked me 5 – 6. I was going to answer when I noticed that he was having my passport in his hand! Aunt Lucy was standing just behind him and smiling like an idiot. Aunt Lucy went with me back to the queue at the check-in desk. I was really nervous, 6 – 7. After getting my ticket, I saw that I only had a few minutes left. I said goodbye to Aunt Lucy and ran up to the security control. The woman at the desk took my ticket and 7 – 8. “Of course”, I answered with a smile.

A) if I had lost something  B) forgot their bus tickets  C) my aunt’s mobile number  D) find it anywhere  E) asked: “Do you have your passport?”  F) from Bratislava to Copenhagen  G) so I was happy that she was there with me  H) had no money with her  I) to go to Denmark
**Task 22 (8 points)**

Prečtěte si dialóg medzi Luciou a Máriou a rozhodnite, které tvrdenia (1 - 8) sú pravdivé (A - true) a které nepravdivé (B - false). Uveďte aj číslo riadku, podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

1. **Lucy**: I finally got the invitation for the interview. I can't wait to go to London.
2. **You can't imagine how excited I am about it.**
3. **Mary**: Wait, did you really apply for that job as an au pair? Are you sure about going to London? Sorry, I just thought that you weren't interested in that job anymore.
4. **Lucy**: I am really surprised by your decision.
5. **Why are you going?**
6. **Lucy**: Well, I simply ran out of money. I can't live on the money I get here.
7. **Mary**: OK. I am not surprised by that. But have you ever thought of the risks of being an au pair? Family life in Britain is different from ours.
8. **Lucy**: I can't think of anything that will stop me from going.
9. **Mary**: Are you sure that you can take care of small children? Lucy, listen to me.
10. **You will be responsible for them. It’s not easy.**
11. **Lucy**: Look, it's really important to me! I insist on going.
12. **Mary**: I am really sorry for shouting. I'm just worried about you. Please, don't go.

0. Lucy wants to go to work in London very much.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 1
1. Mary has finally been invited for the interview.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 2
2. Mary was not surprised about Lucy’s decision to go to London.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 3
3. Lucy wants to work in London because she has no money now.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 4
4. Mary is surprised about Lucy’s money situation.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 5
5. Mary is worried about Lucy because family life in Britain is different.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 6
6. Mary is explaining Lucy that looking after children is hard.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 7
7. Mary apologised for her behaviour.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 8
8. Mary is trying to persuade Lucy not to go.
   A (true) B (false) Which line (1 - 14) supports your answer? 9

**Task 23 (5 points)**

Prečtěte si text o Vianočích a vianočných nákupoch. Na základe prečítaného textu doplňte vety 1 - 5 jedným slovom z textu. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Christmas is said to be a time of peace. Everybody finds their own meaning within it. Some people look forward to the Christian spirit of Christmas, others to eating delicious food, watching television and simply relaxing. However, the pre-Christmas period is not very peaceful. People seem to go crazy buying presents for their friends and families. All the sellers push their goods in different ways - through TV commercials, magazine advertisements or on billboards. It is especially difficult for parents of young children. In the months before Christmas the adverts tell the children exactly what they should ask for from Father Christmas. With all these suggestions, parents hurry out to spend their hard-earned money. Supermarkets are filled with Christmas decorations, toys and clothes. Everything sells well, even if the quality isn't high. Some people don't care. They will buy anything if the price is good enough. Of course, there is an alternative to these shops - Christmas fairs. There are crowds of people there, but there is also a special Christmas atmosphere.

**Example:** The time before Christmas is not _peaceful._

1. The sellers __________ their goods through advertising.
2. The adverts tell __________ what to ask for from Father Christmas.
3. Parents __________ their money on presents from the adverts.
4. People don't __________ to buy goods of low quality.
5. Christmas markets are full of people who want to experience Christmas __________.

**Task 24 (7 points)**


**Example:** The early history of April Fools Day 0 – A.

It is thought that 1 – _______. In 1582, Pope Gregory introduced a new calendar which became known as the Gregorian calendar (and is still used today). The new
calendar moved 2 — _______. However, news travelled slowly in those days and so 3 — _______. These people were called “April fools” by the rest of the population. In the eighteenth century, the celebration spread to Britain and from there to 4 — _______. Nowadays, it is an international festival of fun. The kinds of jokes which people play on April Fools Day range from the very simple — sugar in the saltcellar or 5 — _______. More organised jokes, such as exchanging classrooms, 6 — _______. One of the best-known and complex practical jokes was a BBC programme which showed “spaghetti farmers” harvesting spaghetti from “spaghetti trees” and 7 — _______.

A) is not totally clear  
B) resetting clocks and alarms  
C) many people continued to celebrate the new year in April  
D) the “celebration” began in France in the sixteenth century  
E) when people make fun  
F) many of its colonies and former colonies  
G) the start of the new year from April 1st to January 1st  
H) laying it in the sun to dry  
I) to confuse teachers are also common

**Task 25 (5 points)**

Prečítajte si text o tom, prečo lúdia menej čítajú knihy ako kedysi a rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenia (1 – 5) sú pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Uveďte aj odsek (a – e), podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

**a)** Slovaks do not buy many books. There are two main reasons for this. The first one is that books are getting more and more expensive and people cannot afford to buy many of them. This also leads to illegal photocopying, mainly among students who often copy textbooks. Slovak libraries lack finances to be able to provide better services and a wider range of books to readers.

**b)** The second reason why people in Slovakia and other countries do not buy many books is that they do not read so much anymore. There are several reasons why there is a crisis of reading nowadays. People do not look for information in books (such as encyclopedias or textbooks) as much as they used to in the past. They need to save as much time as possible and therefore, they prefer to look up the information on the Internet. Instead of reading good fiction, they watch films.

c) Reading a book takes days or weeks, watching a film just one or two hours. People do not need to concentrate so much: they do not need to imagine things. Everything is ready for them on the screen. Moreover, teenagers prefer the interactive virtual reality of computer games. They participate in the game, take action, feel what the heroes feel. Adults read more and more magazines because it takes less time and concentration than reading a book.

d) To change this negative trend it is very important to develop a good relationship towards reading from a very young age. When a positive relationship is developed, books enrich our lives. We read for pleasure, we train our imagination. Books make us think, amuse us and give answers to some questions. A good book is also a pleasant way to escape from the real world. When we read a lot, we improve our vocabulary too. People who read enough, express themselves better.

e) Some people think that books will die out one day. They say that everything will be read in electronic form and people will have less and less time to read books. Others argue that reading is a hobby for many people and books are a part of the cultural heritage of every nation. That is why they think that the book will stop to exist.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.</td>
<td>Students make photocopies of textbooks because they do not have enough money to buy them.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [a]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Slovak libraries have enough money to offer different books to readers.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Nowadays, people read less because it is a time-consuming activity.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Reading a book does not require concentration and imagination.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Reading books develops thinking, imagination and vocabulary.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Some people think that books will not exist in the future.</td>
<td>A (true)</td>
<td>B (false)</td>
<td>Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? [ ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Task 26 (7 points)**


*Example: Slovakia and Japan 0 – G.*

This is true for politics, culture, religion 1 – _._. The differences are seen immediately when you enter a Japanese classroom. The students look neat and tidy. They all wear 2 – _._._. It is totally different from the Slovak schools where there is no school uniform as such. The system is so strict in Japan that students are not allowed to dye their hair (and are sent home if they do so). They cannot wear watches or earrings, and even have to have standard schoolbags. They cannot even 3 – _._. It will take you a long time to find a cleaner in a Japanese school. You can find one among the students themselves! After school, the students spend fifteen to thirty minutes 4 – _._._. Everything from taking out rubbish and scrubbing the floors to cleaning the toilets (the least favourite job). The fact that students are responsible for the cleaning means that 5 – _._. Most of the graffiti that is there is written in pencil so that it can easily be cleaned off. The students all study extremely hard.

They know that if they fail at school, they will not get a second chance in life. Just a few bad marks can mean the difference between a high-powered executive job and life on the factory floor. The examinations are very difficult and 6 – _._._. They only get six weeks of summer holidays to recover. Does all this mean that the students get a better education? Well, they are among the best in mathematics and science. When it comes to languages like English 7 – _._._. They are taught to remember words and phrases by heart instead of using them in communication.

A) there is very little graffiti in the schools.  
B) but also for the education system.  
C) the students are not good enough.  
D) travelled to school by bus.  
E) cleaning the whole building.  
F) exactly the same uniform.  
G) are very different countries.  
H) stressful for the students.  
I) carry money.

**Task 27 (5 points)**


The average Slovak family tries to go on holidays at least once a year. Some prefer winter holidays and go to Slovak or Austrian ski resorts to ski. Most people travel during the summer holidays because the weather conditions are usually favourable and children do not go to school. Some people address a travel agency and choose a trip from a catalogue. The agency usually arranges everything - travel, accommodation, insurance and a travel guide. The most frequent summer holiday destinations of Slovaks are Croatia, Egypt, Greece, Italy, Spain, Tunisia, or Thailand. Last minute or first moment offers have become extremely popular and people use them a lot. However, some Slovaks prefer to travel on their own and do not need a travel agency to make arrangements for them. They book accommodation and travel on the Internet and study everything necessary before the departure. They are called backpackers and they usually get to know the country better because they are in closer contact with its people. Travelling is a lifetime passion for many people in Slovakia. Globetrotters (world travellers) and travel journalists spend most of their time travelling seeking adventure and knowledge.

*Example: Most Slovak families travel for summer holidays because of good weather.*

1. Some people __________ travel agencies to arrange the trip for them.
2. Last minute and first moment trips are very __________.
3. Some people prefer to __________ alone.
4. __________ organise their trips on their own.
5. __________ look for adventure.
Task 28 (5 points)

Prečtěte si text o brušných tancech a rozhodněte, které tvrzení (1 – 5) jsou pravdivé (A – true) a které nepravdivé (B – false). Uveďte aj odsek (a – e), podle kterého ste vaši odpověd. Postupujte podle příkladu.

a) Belly dancing is the oldest form of dance. It has roots in all ancient cultures from India to the Middle East. According to some dancers, it originated in Egypt. It developed through the influence of many different cultures. Belly dance has traditional associations with both religious and erotic elements.

b) It is wrong to say that belly dancing is danced to entertain men. In the past, this ritual was performed for other women – especially during parties preparing a young woman for marriage and childbirth. Even today, the presence of men is not permitted in many countries. For Saudi women, the dance is sacred and it cannot be watched by men at all. Many Middle Eastern countries forbid women to perform the dance in public. During the 1950’s, belly dancing was illegal in Egypt. Nowadays, it can be danced with one condition that dancers do not show their stomachs.

c) Belly dance is designed for the female body, with an emphasis on hip moves and chest moves. It is a dance characterised by smooth movements alternated with shaking and shimmy type moves. During dancing, different parts of the body are isolated. It is danced barefoot to feel connection between the dancer, her expression and Mother Earth.

d) Belly dancing costumes are colourful and decorated. The dancers wear finger cymbals and belts made of coins which in the past expressed the family’s wealth. Other interesting accessories used during the dance are swords, snakes and huge candelabras with flaming candles.

e) Nowadays, the popularity of belly dancing is growing. Belly dance festivals, workshops and seminars attract large audiences of interested men and women. Many dancers now study the art form of the dance. They travel to the Middle East and elsewhere to learn it. In the present, belly dance is enjoyed for its artistry, ethnicity, beauty, healthy eroticism and fun.

---

Task 29 (5 points)


The amount of people using mobile phones has rapidly increased, especially in Eastern Europe. Mobile phones have become either the symbol of comfortable, quick communication or fashion, mainly among young people. On the other hand, a recent survey indicates growing fear of radiation from using mobile phones. People are worried that their everyday usage might cause diseases, such as cancer.

The mobile phones are not radioactive as such, but they emit radio waves, just as other electronic equipment does, when they are switched on. However, mobiles are held against the head for a long time which might be harmful to our brain. However, there is still a lack of evidence to prove this.

If you are concerned about it, here are some precautions you can take:
- Do not spend hours on the mobile phone.
- If you have regular headaches, stop using your mobile phone for a while to see if that helps.
- Send messages instead of calling. It will save your money too.

Some people advise using hands free kits (you carry your mobile phone in your pocket, listen to the earpiece and talk on a tiny microphone). However, the Consumer Association thinks that having tiny earpieces may even increase the level of radio emissions because the wire acts as an extra antenna. Hopefully, the wireless earpieces will reduce all risks and will guarantee safe and “healthy” calling.

---

Example: Mobile phones are fashionable among young people.

1. Using mobiles can be dangerous for our _________.
2. The mobile phones are not ____________; it is the radio waves.
3. When mobiles are switched on, they _____________ radio waves.
4. Sending _____________ will save your money.
5. It is believed that using the _____________ instead of mobiles will guarantee safe calling and will prevent health problems connected with using mobiles.
Prečtěte si text o žraločích a rozhodněte, které tvrdení (1 – 6) jsou pravdivé (A – true) a které nepravdivé (B – false). Uveďte a odsek (a – f), podle kterého ste sa rozhodli pro vašu odpověď. Postupujte podle příkladu.

a) Sharks belong to the worlds oldest creatures. They first appeared 400 million years ago and became highly developed over the next 200 million years. There are over 300 species in the world, ranging in size from less than 30 centimetres to over 15 metres in length.

b) They are an amazing example of evolution. They are efficient killing machines, which can hunt systematically and skillfully. Their teeth re-grow when they are knocked out. They have a simple but highly effective immune system – sharks never get cancer.

c) Sharks are seen as a store of medical miracles. There is no careful research to discover what medical advances are locked up in their bodies. They are killed for their body parts and other unknown reasons.

d) They are also being killed for their meat, skin and jaws (which can sell for thousands of pounds to collectors). Tens of millions of sharks are fished each year and a similar number are accidentally caught when fishing for other fish species. This is why there are 80% less sharks.

e) This can have a negative effect on sea life. Sharks are part of a finely-balanced eco-system and without them there could be population explosions of other sea creatures. For example, in Australia a low number of sharks was the reason of huge increase in octopus numbers which caused that local shrimp catch was devastated.

f) It is true that people are killed in shark attacks, but these cases are extremely rare. There is much more chance that sharks could save lives through their proven medical properties.

4. Without sharks, there would be more sea creatures in the sea.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

In Australia, reduced amount of sharks caused more shrimps in the sea.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

The shark attacks on people are not very frequent.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

---

0. Sharks appeared 200 million years ago.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

1. Sharks are systematic and skilful hunters.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

2. Sharks' immune system is weak.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?  

3. There are tens of millions of sharks caught by accident.  
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer?
WRITING TASKS

úlohy na precvičenie písania

Task 31 (20 points)

Write a story about summer holidays that you have spent with your friends at the seaside. Write about:
- what you did there
- what happened (positive and negative events)
- whether you liked it or not.

Task 32 (20 points)

An exchange student will soon stay with you and your family. Write a letter to him/her about:
- your flat or house
- your mother
- your father.

Task 33 (20 points)

Write an e-mail to your friend and ask him to go out on a trip with you. Describe:
- where and when you will go
- how you will get there
- what you will do there.

Task 34 (20 points)

Write a short description of your hometown. Describe:
- its size, population and location
- interesting places to visit
- what you like and dislike about it.

Task 35 (20 points)

Is the Internet a Must? Write a short composition about this topic. Write about:
- what people use the Internet for
- the advantages of using the Internet
- the negative impacts the Internet has on people
- your personal opinion on the usefulness of the Internet.

Task 36 (20 points)

Write a report about a volleyball competition that was held at your school. You were one of the players. Describe:
- the participants
- the development of the game
- the final score
- your feelings about the event.
WRITING – EXAMPLES

Příbeh (Story telling)

**Summer – Time to Relax?**

Last summer I found a last-minute holiday offer to Majorca. There was no need to wait for anything better because everything seemed ideal. So I called my friends Martin and Adam to join me. They were very pleased and agreed to go with me.

The flight from Bratislava airport was on time and smooth. We were looking forward to new experiences on the island. And one of them happened after the arrival when Adam didn’t find his luggage. We had to report it and then hoped it would arrive later. However, they didn’t find it, and Adam has never seen his suitcase again.

Of course, we tried to help him as much as we could. We lent him our clothes and also bought him a nice T-shirt. It was a present for his birthday, which we celebrated in a lovely restaurant very close to the beach.

The food there was great. We wanted to stay there much longer, but it was impossible because the next morning we travelled to the north of Majorca. However, a bad luck continued because Martin got sick. It seemed he had eaten something wrong at the restaurant. He got fever and kept vomiting. Of course, we couldn’t go anywhere because someone had to stay with him.

Later, when Martin’s health improved, we travelled a little bit. We enjoyed our trips a lot. In spite of the bad luck we had in Majorca, we think that the time we spent there was great.
Súkromný e-mail – pozvánka (Personal e-mail – invitation)

To: friend@mojmaj.sk
Subject: Holidays in Slovakia

Dear Mark,

How are you? I hope you're fine and enjoy the beginning of the summer holiday. Do you have any plans?

Yesterday, I talked to my father and he told me that our cottage house in the mountains would be free until August. I like it very much and I think I'd like to spend a few days there. Now, I need to find out who would like to join me and that's the reason why I'm writing you.

As you can remember, a few years ago we were there together and you seemed to like it. Since then, it has got better because of new facilities and attractions that are available there. They also offer rides on horses.

I would like to go sometime next week and plan to spend there 5 days or so. Travelling is no problem because a railway station is very well connected with the cottage house. As for food, I would like every guest to bring something over. We'll talk about this later, ok?

Please, reply soon. I need to know whether you want to go or not. But I think if you go, we'll have a great time.

Have a nice day,

Andrew

Opis (Descriptive essay)

Nitra – My Birthplace

Every person has his/her favourite place. For me this place is my birthplace and hometown – Nitra.

I was born in Nitra almost 20 years ago and have lived there ever since. Many people prefer to move to bigger towns, but I like Nitra a lot and do not want to move away.

The town is not very big, but it is a strategic point in the south-western region that is known for the agriculture industry. There are many wheat and sunflower fields surrounding the town. Another landmark is Nitra Castle, around which the town spreads. From the castle hill there is a very nice view of the city and its surroundings.

The centre is quite small but very rich in history and culture. We have two theatres that are frequently visited by people from all Slovakia. Another typical feature of Nitra is the high number of young people that you can normally see there. It is because there are two universities.

I especially like the pedestrian zone with small shops and many terraces in summertime. This street is full of people who want to enjoy the unique atmosphere of Nitra. For those who want to enjoy nature there is a town park with a lake, animals and facilities for children. If you want to do some climbing, go up the Zobor hill.

As many other Slovak towns, Nitra has its own housing estates that are not very nice, but they offer comfortable living conditions.

Even though Nitra seems a regular town, similar to many others in our country, I feel a strong bond that connects me to this place. I think I would not like to move away because my entire life is here.

Adresu odosielateľa nie je nutné uvádzať, protože sa nachádza v záhlaví e-mailu. Však v prípade oficiálnej elektronického komunikovalo je vhodné na záver e-mailu priložiť kontaktné údaje meno a priejmenko odosielateľa, pracovnú pozíciu, adresu spoločnosti, telefónne číslo a iné.

Adresu odosielateľa nie je nutné uvádzať, protože sa nachádza v záhlaví e-mailu. Však v prípade oficiálnej elektronického komunikovalo je vhodné na záver e-mailu priložiť kontaktné údaje meno a priejmenko odosielateľa, pracovnú pozíciu, adresu spoločnosti, telefónne číslo a iné.
Esej s prvky argumentácie (Argumentative essay)

Is the Internet a Must?

In the last decade people have started to use the Internet almost daily. Browsing websites, sending e-mails, chatting and other forms of communication became a part of our lives. But can we live and work in the present world also without the Internet?

People who communicate at work with their customers or clients on daily basis say the Internet is a great phenomenon. For example, most companies and people prefer e-mail to regular mail because it is much faster.

Another advantage is the amount of information the Internet collects. It can be understood as an enormous encyclopedia that can be used freely. Just type what you are looking for and within a few seconds you get the information.

On the other hand, the Internet can make us addicted to it. There are some people who browsed websites without stopping. Later on, they feel nervous when they cannot browse. Unfortunately, these people sometimes do not recognise that there is something wrong with them.

Many parents leave their children to use the Internet without supervising them. However, the content of many websites is not for children, so they come across violence or any other inappropriate material. This content can negatively influence child’s behaviour.

I think the Internet can be very helpful because it makes our communication faster and widens our knowledge. However, it must be used wisely because there are cases of Internet addiction or children with behaviour defects.

Správa (Report)

Sports Day

Last week on Monday, February 20th a volleyball competition called HS VolleyCup was held at our secondary school on Tulipánova street. All the teams in schools in Nitra participated in this competition: Kráľovský School, Benkova School, Beethovenova School, Fatranska School and our Tulipánova School.

The first ten minutes of the game were quite easy. Our team scored some points that motivated us a lot. Everything went well, but then our captain, Jana Dušková, got hurt and it was impossible to continue the game.

Suddenly, the coach chose me to substitute Jana. At first, I panicked, but later on I was able to concentrate and play without faults. I felt that with each touch of the ball my confidence was growing and my performance was improving.

We qualified for the finals where we played against the Tulipánova School team. Their team had won many competitions, so they came with ambitions to win this one as well. The game was quite difficult, but we won because the opposite team made a few mistakes. Finally, after forty-three minutes, we scored our final points and an unexpected victory was on our side. The final score was 3:1 for our team.

I think that no one imagined that we would win the competition followed by the team from Tulipánova and Fatranska School. It was a surprise for everyone and a source of prestige for our school. Our principal organised a lovely celebration and a day trip to the mountains.
KEY

kūč k písomnej časti

LISTENING TASKS

TASK 1

TASK 2

TASK 3

TASK 4

TASK 5

TASK 6
1. theatre performance  2. classical music  3. beautiful  4. favourite
5. August  6. dolls house  7. countryside

TASK 7
1. fifth  2. lift  3. inside  4. advertisement  5. expensive  6. kitchen  7. restau-
nants  8. interested

TASK 8

TASK 9
1. wonderful  2. model  3. five  4. expensive  5. reliable

TASK 10

LANGUAGE IN USE

TASK 11 The Internet
(to have)  7. A (many)  8. B (send)  9. D (these)  10. A (as)  11. C (easily)  12. B
(normal)  19. B (few)  20. A (can)

TASK 12
1. players  2. ability  3. important  4. height  5. beginners  6. professional
7. interesting  8. local  9. happiness  10. relaxation

TASK 13
1. found  2. was  3. made  4. lived  5. studied  6. have decorated
7. have read  8. have found  9. left  10. was

TASK 14 Camp America
1. A (for)  2. B (million)  3. C (these)  4. A (can)  5. A (who)  6. D (as)  7. B
(hard)  8. C (the)  9. C (permitted)  10. B (understanding)  11. D (are)
(applied)  18. D (physically)  19. D (leave)  20. A (to)

TASK 15
1. was  2. went  3. was waiting  4. decorated  5. was sitting  6. were prepared
7. explained  8. opened  9. come  10. prefer

TASK 16 Nick's First Job
1. finished  2. wanted  3. didn't accept  4. went  5. was looking  6. was
7. found  8. made  9. made  10. have  11. was  12. was arranging  13. called
14. told  15. was looking  16. asked  17. wanted  18. believe  19. took  20. like

TASK 17 The Leprechaun
18. D (one's)  19. D (a)  20. C (myself)

TASK 18
1. graduated  2. exams (examinations)  3. recently  4. successful  5. foreign

TASK 19
1. gives  2. hate  3. caught  4. don't have  5. started  6. is  7. go  8. began
9. feel  10. hope
TASK 20
1. studies 2. health 3. loss 4. infection 5. dangerous 6. pain 7. serious
8. importance

• READING TASKS

TASK 21

TASK 22
14 8. A line 14

TASK 23
1. push 2. children 3. spend 4. care 5. atmosphere

TASK 24

TASK 25
graph e

TASK 26

TASK 27
1. address 2. popular 3. travel 4. Backpackers 5. Globetrotters

TASK 28
1. B paragraph b 2. B paragraph b 3. A paragraph c 4. A paragraph d 5. A para-
graph e

TASK 29
1. brain 2. radioactive 3. emit 4. messages 5. wireless earpieces

TASK 30
paragraph e 6. A paragraph f

• WRITING TASKS

TASK 31 – 36: see pages 172 – 177
ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES AND SLOVAKIA

Anglicky hovoriace krajiné a slovensko

THE UNITED KINGDOM

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles. Great Britain comprises England, Wales and Scotland. The English, Scottish, Welsh and Irish people differ in their way of life, customs, values and traditions. The largest cities of the UK are London, Birmingham, Glasgow, Liverpool, Manchester, Sheffield, Bristol, Leeds and Edinburgh. The UK is an industrialised country which is now moving more towards service industries, such as finance. Major industries are iron and steel engineering. The chief agricultural products are wheat, potatoes, milk and meat.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a constitutional monarchy. The present sovereign, Queen Elizabeth II, has little real political power. The United Kingdom is governed by the Cabinet with twenty ministers and the Prime Minister. The official residence of Prime Minister is at 10 Downing Street. The Parliament consists of the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The House of Lords also functions as the highest court in the land. Britain's most important political parties are the Conservative Party, the Labour Party and the Liberal Democrats.

ENGLAND

England is divided into 36 counties. Lancashire, Yorkshire, Kent, Essex and Sussex are the largest and the most populated. The country is highly industrialised. Sheffield has concentrated on the iron and steel industries. Birmingham, the second largest city of England, has developed light engineering and motor vehicle manufacture. England has a very rich architecture. Many of the greatest cathedrals and churches were built between 1100 and 1500. The English countryside is remarkable for its green fields and trees. Small villages and old market towns look beautiful with their well-kept gardens and houses. The country has a long coastline with many famous seaside resorts, such as Brighton. The most beautiful natural scenery can be seen in the northwest of England in the Lake District, an area which inspired many of the English romantic poets.

London

London is the capital of England and of Great Britain. It is a city of traditions, historic buildings, monuments, theatres, parks and interesting museums. It is the biggest city in Europe.

On the River Thames, there is Tower Bridge and the Tower visited by many tourists. In the past, it was a fortress, a royal palace and a prison. Now the Tower is a museum of arms and the place where the crown jewels are kept.

There are many beautiful churches in London. St. Paul's Cathedral is the greatest of English churches. It was built by the famous English architect, Sir Christopher Wren. Wellington, Nelson and other great British figures are buried there. Westminster Abbey is the coronation church of almost all English monarchs and most of them are buried there.

Nearby stands the Palace of Westminster, also known as the Houses of Parliament, which is the seat of the British Parliament. While Parliament is in session a flag flies at the top of the Big Ben clock tower, which is famous for its accuracy and for its 13-ton bell.

Another place of interest for visitors to London is Buckingham Palace, the London residence of the British royal family. Every day at 11:30 the Queen's Guard in uniform perform the ceremony of the Changing of the Guard.

The most famous streets for its shops and entertainment are Piccadilly, Bond Street, Regent's Street, Carnaby Street and Oxford Street. In the centre of Piccadilly Circus there is the Statue of Eros (God of Love). One of the largest London squares is Trafalgar Square with the statue of Admiral Nelson in the centre.

National Gallery contains Britain's best-known collection of paintings. The Tate Gallery is another big gallery containing modern art. Visitors of Madam Tussaud's can see waxworks of famous people from all the world.

London has a large number of parks and gardens. The best-known are St. James's Park, Buckingham Palace Gardens, Hyde Park, Regent's Park and Kensington Gardens. Hyde Park is the largest of the royal parks. It has many attractions including a small lake and Speaker's Corner, where anybody can make a public speech about any topic.

Cambridge

Cambridge is a beautiful city lying on the east bank of the river Cam. It is situated at 80 km north of London. Cambridge is famous for its university. The first college was founded in 1284 and over the following 300 years most of the other colleges were established. The beautiful architecture of the college buildings is combined with the beauty of open spaces, gardens and bridges over the river Cam. The oldest of colleges also include Clare (1326), Trinity Hall (1350), Corpus Christi (1352), Queen's (1448), St. Catherine's (1473) and Trinity (1546). All of them are rich in history and tradition.
**Wales**

Wales is a largely mountainous country. It is famous for its long rivers, wide lakes and high hills. The majority of the people live in the coal-mining and industrial region of the south around Cardiff, the capital of Wales, and Swansea. There are two languages spoken in Wales – English and Welsh, which is a Celtic language and very different from English. Welsh is spoken by about 21 per cent of the population and is the official language together with English. Wales is rich in culture and history. The Welsh people are known for their love of music and poetry. The University of Wales is the most prestigious university.

**Scotland**

Scotland is a wonderful country – full of traditions, colour and romance. Scottish people are very independent and proud of their culture and heritage. They speak various dialects of English and 60,000 also speak Gaelic, an ancient Scottish language (in the Highlands and the Western Isles). Scotland is a country of hills, lakes (called lochs), swift rivers and deep valleys (glen). The most beautiful part of Scotland is the region known as the Highlands. The most famous lakes are Loch Lomond and Loch Ness where a mythical monster, Nessie, lives according to legends.

There are four big cities in Scotland – Glasgow, Edinburgh, Dundee and Aberdeen. Edinburgh, the ancient capital of Scotland, is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. It has become an international centre of music and drama and is famous for its annual festival – the Edinburgh International Festival of Music and Drama. Edinburgh is also famous for the engineering, printing and electronic industries. Glasgow was known all over the world for its shipbuilding and heavy steel manufacture. Scotland has its own law and education system. There are also special traditions in Scotland, such as playing bagpipes and wearing kilts (typical skirts for both men and women). Scotland has many whisky distilleries with a long tradition, which has made Scottish whisky world-famous.

**Northern Ireland**

Northern Ireland occupies the northern fifth of Ireland. Belfast, the capital, is also the location of Queen's University. The city is the shopping, educational, commercial, entertainment and service centre of Northern Ireland. It is also an important port. The chief exports of Northern Ireland are ships, aircraft and linen textiles. There are many small farms producing pigs, cattle, milk and eggs. The principal crops are potatoes, barley and oats. The population of Northern Ireland is Protestant and about 40 per cent are Catholic. The religious and economic problems of the people in the Northern Ireland are still alive. The Protestant community do not want to join the Republic of Ireland, but they want to remain the part of the UK.

**Republic of Ireland**

The Republic of Ireland has a population of almost four million people, who are mainly Catholics. The capital is Dublin. Other important towns are Cork, Limerick and Waterford.

From 1845 to 1846, there was a great famine because of the failure of the potato crop. At that time, over 1.5 million people emigrated, mostly to the USA. In 1921, the Irish Free State was formed. The terrorist activities between the Catholics and Protestants have caused many political difficulties between the governments of Ireland and the UK.
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

USA is home to people of European origin, Afro-American origin, Native American, Japanese, Chinese and other origins. Their official language is English. Many people of the USA also speak their minority and immigrant languages.

The USA is a federation of 50 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii. The most densely populated are the states of New York, Pennsylvania, Illinois, Ohio and Michigan. There are the most important cities, e.g. New York (14 million people), Washington DC (the capital of the USA), Philadelphia and the biggest industrial centres, Chicago and Detroit. The USA is rich in most of the metals and minerals needed in basic industries.

The northern region of the USA is called New England. It includes the states of Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Vermont. It is the region where some of the first colonists settled. Old traditions are still preserved, especially in architecture and lifestyle. There are some of the most famous private universities, e.g. Harvard and Yale.

The Southern states of Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Kentucky, Tennessee, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Florida and Arkansas are agricultural, growing cotton and tobacco. It is here that the slave trade started and Negro slaves were used to work on cotton and tobacco plantations. Racism problems are still a serious problem for the south. The State of Florida is different from the rest of the south. There are pine forests, orange plantations and beaches. This part of the country often suffers severe damage from hurricanes.

Texas, the largest state of the federation, is famous for its oil, prairies and cattle ranches. Native Americans still live on reservations in New Mexico and Arizona. The Southwest with its extensive deserts is characterised by the lack of rain and extreme temperatures during summer. The famous Grand Canyon is situated in this region.

The American West includes the following states: Washington, Oregon, Wyoming, Montana, Utah, Idaho, Nevada and California. They are also called the Rocky Mountain States. With the exception of its cities, the American West is very thinly populated. The natural beauties of national parks of this region of the USA are world famous. Thousands of tourists visit the Rocky Mountains and California beaches every year. Visitors are also attracted to the cities of California, such as San Francisco and Los Angeles. One of the most famous districts of Los Angeles, Hollywood, is the centre of both the motion-picture and television industries. Besides southern California, there are also other tourist centres, such as the semi-tropical areas of Florida, Hawaii, Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands with fine beaches. Winter sports resorts with beautiful sceneries can be found in the Rocky Mountains and in New England. The Canadian-American Niagara Falls figures among the most beautiful natural wonders of the world.

The American system of government is based on the principles established in the Constitution, written in 1787, and in the Bill of Rights. The Constitution divides the powers of the government into three branches—the Executive Branch, the Legislative Branch and the Judicial Branch. The President of the United States is chosen in a national election for a term of four years and may only be re-elected once.

New York City

New York City is the largest city in the USA. Its population is more than 8 million people. It is an important seaport and the largest business, industrial and cultural centre of the USA. It is also the centre of the art world, the media world, the theatre world and the fashion world.

New York, originally called New Amsterdam, was a little Dutch town built on a small part of Manhattan Island. In 1626, the Dutch colonizers bought the island from the Native Americans for 24 dollars in goods. The Dutch protected the town against the natives with a wooden wall. Today, it is Wall Street, which is known as the world's most important financial centre.

One of the most impressive views of New York City is the typical Manhattan skyline, seen from Liberty Island, which is dominated by a number of skyscrapers. In 2001, the tallest of them, the 110-storey Trade Centre Towers, were destroyed in a terrorist attack.

There are many famous attractions in New York City. The Empire State Building has 102 storeys and a TV tower at the top. It was the highest building in the world until 1954. Another famous place is the Rockefeller Centre; a large business and entertainment complex of 21 buildings, mostly skyscrapers.

The Brooklyn Bridge was once the longest in the world. It connects Brooklyn (one of the five boroughs of New York City) to Manhattan Island. The Brooklyn Bridge is a masterpiece of 19th century engineering. It was the first bridge to use steel for cable wire.

The Statue of Liberty stands with its torch in New York City Harbour, on Liberty Island. It is 92 metres high and it weighs 225 tons. The Statue, symbolises freedom and democracy. It was the first sight for immigrants coming to the USA by ship in 19th and 20th centuries.

Another interesting place for visitors to New York is Fifth Avenue, famous for its luxurious shops, jewellers and office buildings. Equally famous is Broadway, an old Indian road. Most theatres and well-known Metropolitan Opera and Carnegie Hall as well as many cinemas and bars are on Broadway.
People coming to New York City like to visit Chinatown with its restaurants serving typical Chinese food. A unique atmosphere is characteristic of Greenwich village, the home of artists, writers, actors and musicians.

Central Park is the largest and most important park in New York City. It offers both summer and winter attractions, such as a zoo, an ice-skating rink, an open-air theatre, tennis courts, cycle paths, children's playgrounds, concerts and dances.

**Washington, D.C.**

Washington, D.C. (District of Columbia) is the capital of the USA. There are the government buildings, such as the White House, the official residence of the U.S. president, the Capitol, which is the Congressional building and the Supreme Court.

There are more than 300 memorials and statues in Washington including the three most famous ones, the Washington Monument, the Lincoln Memorial and the Jefferson Memorial. Georgetown, situated to the west of the city, is the oldest and the most prestigious part and houses many foreign embassies. To the south-west are Arlington National Cemetery, Ronald Reagan Airport and the Pentagon, the U.S. military headquarters.

Washington is also a major national centre of culture and education. There are four universities in Washington, including Georgetown University (1815), which is Catholic, George Washington University (1821), the American University and Howard University which was opened in 1860 as a university for black students.

Principal cultural institutions are the National Gallery of Art, the Smithsonian Institution and the Library of Congress. The Smithsonian Institution is the world's largest museum complex of 15 museums and the zoo. It is an important centre for research in the arts, science and history. The Library of Congress is the largest U.S. library. It contains great collections of books, manuscripts and maps.

**San Francisco**

San Francisco is one of the most interesting cities in the United States and a major tourist centre. The city of San Francisco was almost completely destroyed by earthquake and fire in 1906, but it was quickly rebuilt. Now, San Francisco is the second largest city of California and an important financial, commercial and industrial centre on the Pacific Ocean. The famous Golden Gate Bridge, which is 1 280 metres long, crosses the entrance to San Francisco Bay, one of the best natural harbours in the world. The city has an interesting street railway system, which is a combination of streetcars, trolley coaches, buses and cable-cars.

**CANADA**

Canada is the second largest country in the world. It is a country of colonial origins, first French and then British. About 29 million people of different national and cultural groups live there. Canada's population is 48 per cent of British origin, 31 per cent French origin, 2 per cent Native American and Eskimo and other minorities. English and French are both official languages, but only 17 per cent of the population is bilingual; 67 per cent speak only English, 14 per cent only French and 2 per cent other languages. All the largest cities, e.g. Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, Winnipeg, Ottawa (the capital) and Quebec are situated near Canada's southern border. Canada is rich in raw materials including gold, silver, nickel, uranium, copper, zinc, coal, natural gas and oil. One-third of the country is covered with forest. Canada is a leading exporter of wood and wood products. Fishing is also an important export industry: fish are caught in the rivers, lakes and ocean too. The standard of living is very high there. Canada is divided into ten provinces and two national territories. The provinces have control over education, property laws and natural resources. The responsibility for social welfare and health care is divided between federal and provincial governments.

**Ottawa**

Ottawa is the capital of Canada. The most famous buildings, which dominate the Ottawa skyline, are the Houses of Parliament built in the Neo-Gothic style in 1865. The central feature of the Parliament is the Peace Tower, which houses the Memorial Chamber commemorating those Canadians who died for their country. Major educational centres include the University of Ottawa and St. Paul University. These two universities are bilingual. The third major Canadian university, Carleton University, is English.
AUSTRALIA

Australia is an island continent. There are two big deserts here, the Great Sandy Desert and Great Victoria Desert. The only fertile western area is the Swanland, which has a Mediterranean climate. Australia is not densely populated. Within its large area there are only about 18 million inhabitants, mostly of British origin. There are about 430,000 Aborigines living in Australia. Recently, many people from Asian countries have settled there. The Commonwealth of Australia is an independent self-governing country within the British Commonwealth. Queen Elizabeth II, represented by a governor-general, is Head of State. The capital, Canberra, is the seat of the Federal Parliament, which consists of two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives. The largest cities are Sydney, Melbourne, Adelaide and Brisbane. There are about 40 universities in Australia. The oldest of them are in Sydney and Melbourne. Australia is an important wool-growing country. It is one of the leading producers of meat and dairy products. The Pacific Coast beaches of Australia are attractive for many tourists.

Canberra

Canberra is the capital of Australia. All the important buildings of Canberra are relatively new. They include the Australian National University (1936), the National Library of Australia (1968), the High Court of Australia (1981), the Australian National Gallery (1982) and many other important cultural centres and institutions. There are various light industries in Canberra and a growing tourism industry.

Sydney

Sydney is the largest city and the chief port of Australia. It lies in Port Jackson Bay, which is quite large and deep enough for even the biggest transoceanic ships. The bay is crossed by a long bridge called Harbour Bridge. The well-known Opera House lies in the bay near Harbour Bridge. The Art Gallery contains many works of Australian and European masters. Sydney has two universities - Sydney University and the University of South Wales. There are numerous skyscrapers in Sydney. The Centre Point Tower is 304.8 metres high and is the highest building in the southern hemisphere. There are restaurants and platforms from which visitors can get a view of the bay, the harbour and skyscrapers. Sydney has about 4 million inhabitants. The majority of the population live in houses in suburbs surrounding the city centre. Sydney is rich in parks and also has The Royal Botanic Garden with many exotic plants. There are many beautiful sandy beaches close to the city where the people can relax during hot summer.

NEW ZEALAND

New Zealand is an island country in the Pacific situated south-east of Australia. It consists of two principal islands, North Island and South Island. The northern part of the island has rolling hills and low mountains. The southern half rises from fertile plains along the coast to volcanic mountain peaks in the centre. The city of Rotomana is visited by thousands of tourists each year for its hot springs and geysers.

New Zealand is an independent parliamentary democracy within the British Commonwealth. The official Head of State is the British Queen, represented by a governor-general. Most of the population are of British origin (93 per cent), and about 7 per cent of the population are Maoris - Polynesian people. The Maoris are the original inhabitants of New Zealand who nearly all live in North Island. Whilst English is the official and dominant language, the Maoris speak Maori, a Malayo-Polynesian language. The town of Wellington, situated in the south of North Island, is the capital of New Zealand and a busy seaport.

New Zealand is a wealthy country. It is the world's third largest producer of wool and the exporter of meat, especially mutton and lamb.

SLOVAKIA

Geography

The Slovak Republic is an independent state situated in Central Europe. This area also includes Poland, the Czech Republic, Hungary, Austria, Switzerland and Germany. The Slovak Republic is bordered in the west by the Czech Republic, in the north by Poland, in the east by Ukraine and in the south by Hungary and Austria.

The most important rivers of Slovakia include the Danube, the Váh, the Morava, the Hron, the Nitra, the Hornád and the Orava. The only river that is used for river transport is the Danube. In the course of the 20th century, many dams have been built to serve the...
needs of hydro-electric power, water supply, agriculture, tourism and sports. Most of them have been built on the river Váh, the Danube and other rivers, such as the Orava and the Hornád. There are beautiful mountain lakes in Slovakia, many of which are of glacial origin. The country is also rich in thermal springs and have been in use healing serious diseases for many centuries.

Slovakia is largely a mountainous country. There are extensive lowlands only in the southern and south-eastern parts. In the west, the Little Carpathians are situated to the north of Bratislava. They provide excellent opportunities for inhabitants of the capital and its surroundings to relax and enjoy the beautiful scenery. There are many caves and canyons in the area. The White Carpathians create a natural border between Slovakia and the Czech Republic. There are several national parks and protected regions in Slovakia, such as the High Tatras – the highest mountains of the country – the Low Tatras, the Little Fatras, the Great Fatra, Upper Orava, Kysuca, Polana, Štiavnica hills, Slovak Paradise.

The High Tatras

The High Tatras is situated in the north of Slovakia and creates the natural border between Slovakia and Poland. The highest peaks of the High Tatras are: Gerlach (2,655 m), Lomnický štít (2,632 m) and Kriváň (2,494 m). The most frequently visited lake of the High Tatras is Strbské pleso. It is popular not only for wonderful views of the surrounding mountain peaks but also for excellent climate which is good for healing some diseases of the respiratory system. Visitors to Strbské pleso can stay in modern hotels Panorama and Patria. For tourists interested in older architecture there is Stary Smokovec, founded at the end of the 18th century. The High Tatras National Park is Slovakia’s largest. Some 1,500 species of various plants are represented in the flora of this area including the oldest protected flower of Slovakia – the edelweiss. As for the fauna of the High Tatra, it is still possible to see bear, lynx, wildcats, otters, mountain eagles, chamois, marmot and other animals here.

Slovak Paradise

Slovak Paradise is a romantic and picturesque region. There are many rock windows, caves, wild and deep ravines, waterfalls but also vast plains and ridges with fascinating views of the area. The richness of flora and fauna and the beautiful scenery make the Slovak Paradise an attractive area for tourism. The village of Čingov is the main holiday resort there. Dobšinská ľadová jaskyňa is the oldest ice cave in Europe. It is one of the most attractive places for tourists visiting Slovak Paradise.

Economy

In the past, the majority of people worked in agriculture. Nowadays, it is only 10 per cent of population. The following resources of raw materials and fuels can be found on the territory of Slovakia: copper, iron ore, lead, zinc, precious metals, magnesite, limestone, dolomite, ceramic materials, mineral salts, brown coal and natural gas. Industry is the most important branch of the Slovak economy. It employs a third of the country’s population. Enormous ironworks were built in the east, near Košice, to produce steel, iron and tin for the needs of engineering. In recent years, these have become the part of US Steel. The chemical industry is concentrated in the western part of the country, especially in Bratislava (Slovnaft) and Šaľa (Duslo).

Population and towns

Slovakia is one of the smaller European countries. People of several nations and ethnic groups live on the territory of Slovakia. 85.7 per cent of inhabitants are Slovaks. The most numerous minority, the Hungarians live in the south of Slovakia. The UKrainian and Ruthenian minorities are concentrated in the eastern part of the country. The Roma people live throughout the whole of Slovakia. The Czech, German and Polish people form the smallest minorities.

Slovakia has a long Christian tradition. The majority of religious people are Roman Catholics, Evangelists, Greek Catholics, Calvinists and Russian Orthodox. The Jewish community is small because many Slovak Jews died in the Holocaust during World War II.

The capital of Slovakia, Bratislava, is the political, cultural and industrial centre of the country. The larger towns of Slovakia include Košice, Prešov, Nitra, Žilina, Banská Bystrica. The smaller towns and villages most frequently visited by tourists are Banská Štiavnica, Vlkolinec, Kremnica, Bardejov, Levőa (with the largest wooden altar in the world made by Master Paul in the early 16th century). Many smaller Slovak towns, e.g. Bojnice, Zvolen, Trenčín, Oravský Podzámok, Spišská Nová Ves, Krásna Hôrka, Antol are famous for their castles. The following ones are included in the UNESCO World Cultural Heritage List: Spiš Castle – the largest medieval castle of the Central Europe built in the 12th century, Vlkolinec – a mountain village with typical folk architecture located in the natural setting of the Veľká Fatra mountains, and Banská Štiavnica – a town reservation located in a beautiful valley in the Štiavnica Hills.
**Bratislava**

*Bratislava* is the capital of Slovakia. It has a long history. It was important in Celtic and Roman times. Later the Slavs and then the Avars settled in the area. In the 9th century, Bratislava became an important town of the Great Moravian Empire. In 1467, the first Slovak university, *Academia Istropolitana*, was established. From 1526 to 1784 Bratislava was the capital of Hungary. During that time, the Hungarian kings and queens had their coronations there.

There are around 300 historic palaces and buildings in the old town of Bratislava that are museums and galleries now. In *Bratislava Castle* there are the greatest treasures of the country’s ancient history, such as the Paleolithic Venus, gold Paleolithic jewellery, Celtic coins, silver Roman dishes and jewellery.

The *Old Town Hall*, the oldest town hall on the territory of Slovakia, is also a museum today. The largest palace in the town is *Primaciálny Palace*. It is a gallery presenting Flemish and Italian painters of the 16th to 18th centuries.

*Pálffy’s Palace* exhibits baroque paintings of central Europe and Slovak paintings from the 19th and the 20th centuries. The *Slovak National Gallery* is situated close to the river Danube. Inside the building, there are exhibitions of Slovak art from the 12th century up to the present day.

*Míchal Tower*, with its famous *Michal Gate*, is the only preserved part of the town fortifications. There are hardly any visitors to Bratislava who would not pass through Michal Gate, which is the gate to the Old Town. The exhibition in Michal Tower describes the battles which took place in Bratislava. Plans, arms and military kit of the time are displayed there.

Bratislava is the residence of the Slovak President, the seat of national, political, economical, social and scientific bodies and institutions. It is also the seat of the country’s government and parliament. Bratislava houses the most important university in Slovakia, *Comenius University*. The *Slovak National Theatre* and a number of other theatres, concert and exhibition halls, cinemas are also centres of the country’s cultural life.

**Košice**

*Košice* is the metropolis of East Slovakia. It has a long history. In the 15th century it became one of the biggest European trade centres. The Turkish invasion of Europe in the 16th century changed everything. The trade routes turned westwards and the town was rebuilt into a strong anti-Turkish fortress. In the 17th century there were few rebellions. The tomb of the leader of the last anti-Habsburg uprising, F. Rákóczi II, is in the *Minster of St. Elizabeth*. An exposition documenting this period can be found in the *East Slovak Museum*. In the 17th century, a university in Košice was established. In the 18th and 19th centuries, a number of palaces appeared, which now serve various public purposes: the *Empire Forgách Palace* and the classicist *Town Hall* are libraries, the baroque *Rákóczi Palace* is a technical museum. The rich history and different architecture of Košice fascinate its visitors. It is a pleasant place to live.

**Banská Bystrica**

*Banská Bystrica* was a famous mining town in the past. Nowadays, it is an important administrative, economic and cultural centre of central Slovakia. The centre is dominated by the town castle which dates from the 14th century and the late Gothic town hall, rebuilt at the end of the 15th century. In the historic centre, visitors can admire Gothic, Renaissance and baroque houses. One of them, *Thurzo’s house*, was the seat of the Thurzo-Fogger Mining Society in the 15th – 16th century. Now, it is a museum with archaeological expositions containing collections documenting the importance of mining and crafts in the town. One of the most interesting memorials in Slovakia is the *Museum and Memorial of the Slovak National Uprising*. It is situated in a large modern building together with the open space around it. The heavy arms used in the Slovak National Uprising are displayed there. Inside the monument, the military activities in the battlefields of World War I and II are documented. It is also the seat of one of the most recently established universities, the *University of Matej Bel*.

**Nitra**

The history of *Nitra* is connected with the history of the Great Moravian Empire. *Nitra Castle* was the residence of princes and sovereigns including Prince Švábl. The castle often changed its feudal lords. In the 17th century, the Turks conquered the town and the castle and left it in ruins. The most important historic buildings are *St. Emeram’s Church* (Pribina’s church) and the *Bishop’s Cathedral*, the Great Seminary – St. Gorazd Theological School, the Franciscan Monastery and Church, and a rich diocesan library, unique in Central Europe. Close to the entrance of the castle stands the *Plague Column*, which is the most valued in the country. The modern history of Nitra started after 1945 with rapid development of the town. Nitra has developed into an important district town with two universities – the *University of Agriculture* and the *University of Constantine the Philosopher*. Nitra has become a famous centre of agriculture with its popular summer exhibitions of agricultural machinery, food products and animals, which can be seen every year in the large exhibition area of the *Agrokompex*. *Andrej Bagar Theatre* is a modern building in the centre of the town.
**SOME USEFUL PHRASES AND EXPRESSIONS**

**některé užité fráze a výrazy**

**Box 1:** HOW TO DESCRIBE A PICTURE (ako opisať obrazok)

In this picture, there's a... Na obrazech sa nachádza...
I can see a/some... Vidím nejaký/nejakú/njaké...

**Box 2:** HOW TO DESCRIBE A STRANGE OBJECT (ako opísať neznámy predmet)

It's a thing which... To je vec, ktorá...
It looks like... Vyzera to ako...

**Box 3:** HOW TO DESCRIBE A PLACE (ako opísať miesto)

This place is famous for... Toto miesto je známe pre...
It's situated in... Nachádza sa...

**Box 4:** HOW TO COMPARE (ako opísať spoločné vlastnosti)

It's similar to... Podobá sa to na...
It's the same as... Je to rovnaké ako...

**Box 5:** HOW TO CONTRAST (ako opísať odlišné vlastnosti)

It's different from... Líší sa to od...
There are few differences between... Medzi... je niekoľko rozdielov.
The biggest difference between... is... Najväčší rozdiel medzi... je...

**Box 6:** HOW TO DESCRIBE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES (ako opísať výhody a nevýhody)

There are few advantages/disadvantages of... Medzi výhody/nevýhody patria...
The first advantage/disadvantage is that... Prvá výhodou/nevýhodou je to, že...

**Box 7:** HOW TO EXPRESS OPINION (ako vyjadríť názor)

I think/believe/feel... Myšlim si/verím/cítím, že...
In my opinion/view... Podľa mojho názoru/z mojho hľadiska...
According to some people... Podľa niektorých ľudí...

**Box 8:** HOW TO AGREE WITH AN OPINION (ako súhlasíť s názorom)

I agree (completely)/entirely. (Celkom/úplne) súhlasím.
Exactly. Absolutely. Definitely. Presne. (Rozhodne.)
I think so. Myšlim, že ano.

**Box 9:** HOW TO DISAGREE WITH AN OPINION (ako nesúhlasíť s názorom)

Yes, but... Áno, ale...
I agree with you, but... Súhlasím s vami/tebou, ale...
I don't think so. Nemyslím si to.

**Box 10:** HOW TO GIVE REASONS, ARGUMENTS AND EXAMPLES (ako argumentovať a uviesť príklady)

Firstly/Secondly... Po prvé, po druhé...
The first reason is... Prvým dôvodom je...
For example... Napríklad...

**Box 11:** HOW TO START AN INFORMAL CONVERSATION WITH FRIENDS (ako začať neformálnu konverzáciu s priateľmi)

Hi, Tim, is that you? Ahoj Tim, si to ty?
I haven't seen you for a long time. Dlho som ta nevidel.
Tim, how have you been? Tim, ako sa mávaš?

**Box 12:** HOW TO START A FORMAL CONVERSATION WITH STRANGERS (ako začať formálnu konverzáciu s neznámymi)

Are you here for business or pleasure? Ste si tu kvôli práci alebo zábave?
Is this your first visit to Slovakia? Ste si na Slovensku prvýkrát?
The weather is awful, isn't it? Počasie je hrozne', však?
I'm sorry to trouble you, but haven't we met before? Prepáčte, že vás obťažujem, ale nestretli sme sa už?

**Box 13:** HOW TO FINISH A CONVERSATION (ako ukončiť konverzáciu)

It was great to see you/to talk to you again. Som rád/-a, že sme sa znova stretli./Rád/ rada som sa s vami/tebou poopäť/parozprával/-a.
I am afraid that it's getting late. Bohužiaľ, už je dohľad neskoro. (Musím ist.)
I've got to go now, see you. Už musím ist. Maj sa.
Box 14: HOW TO GIVE RECOMMENDATIONS (ako odporúčiť)

I'd really recommend... Určite by som odporúčil/-a...
You must/certainly try... Určite musíš/mali by ste (mal by si) vyskúšať...
You shouldn't... Nemali by ste.../Nemal by si...
You should never... Nikdy by ste nemali.../Nikdy by si nemal...

Box 15: HOW TO MAKE POLITE REQUESTS (ako zdvořilo o niečo požiadať)

Excuse me, can I...? Prepáčte, môžem...?
Would you mind...? Vádilo by vám.../Vadilo by ti...?
Do you mind if I...? Vádi vám...?/Vadí ti...?
Can you/Could you...? please? Môžete (môžeš)? Mohli by ste (mohol by si)...?
May I...? Smiem...?

Box 16: HOW TO INVITE (ako pozvať)

Would you like to...? Chceli by ste.../Chcel/-a by si...?
Do you feel like...? -ing? Chcelo by sa vám/ti...?

Box 17: HOW TO ACCEPT AN INVITATION (ako prijať pozvanie)

Yes, I'd love to. Áno, rád/-a by som...
That would be great. Thanks. To by bolo výborné. Dakujem.

Box 18: HOW TO REFUSE AN INVITATION (ako odmietnúť pozvanie)

We can't. I'm afraid. Obávam sa, že nemôžeme.
Sorry, but we're busy. Prepáčte, ale sme zaneprázdnení.
Well, actually... Nuž, vlastne...

Box 19: HOW TO OFFER HELP (ako ponúknúť pomoc)

Shall I help you? Má vám/ti pomocť?
Can I help you? Môžem vám/ti pomocť?
I'll do it for you. Správim to pre vás/teba.

Box 20: HOW TO ACCEPT HELP (ako prijať pomoc)

Thank you. That's very kind of you. Dakujem, je to od vás/teba veľmi milé.

Box 21: HOW TO REFUSE HELP (ako odmietnúť pomoc)

It's all right. To je v poriadku.
Thanks. I can manage. Dakujem. Zvládám to.

Box 22: HOW TO COMPLAIN (ako sa stárať)

I would like to complain about... Chcel/a by som sa stárať kvôli...
I am not happy with... Nie som spokojný/-á s...
I was very disappointed when I... Bol/a som skamáňál/-á, keď...

Box 23: HOW TO APOLOGISE (ako sa ospravedlniť)

I am afraid that I cannot... Obávam sa, že nemôžem...
I am sorry... Je mi to fúto...

Box 24: HOW TO EXPRESS PREFERENCE (ako vyjadriť to, čo uprednostňujeme)

I prefer... because. Uprednostňujem..., pretože...
I like... more than/less than... because... Mám/nemám radšej... ako..., pretože...
I enjoy... because... Mám ráď/-a/Teším sa z..., pretože...

Box 25: HOW TO EXPRESS SYMPATHY (ako vyjadriť súcit)

I'm sorry to hear that. Je mi to fúto.
I hope it's not serious. Dúfam, že to nie je vážne.
How bad? Aké zle?

Box 26: HOW TO GIVE ADVICE (ako poradiť)

I think we should... Myslím, že by sme mali...
I think that you should... Myslíš si, že by ste mali/ze by si mal/-a...
You'd better... Mali by ste radšej/Mali/-a by si radšej...

Box 27: HOW TO GIVE COMPLIMENTS (ako pochvaliť)

It tastes good/delicious. Chutí to dobre.
It's very tasty. Je to veľmi chutné.
What a nice sweater! Aký pekný sveter!
That's an elegant handbag. To je elegantná kabelka.
That's a beautiful scarf. To je krásna šatka.
What a good material! Aký dobrý materiál!
Box 28: HOW TO CRITICISE (ako vyjadriť kritiku)

- It tastes good/delicious. Chuti to dobre.
- I think it’s too spicy/salty/overcooked. Myslim, že je to príliš korenité/slanej/prevařené.
- It’s not salty enough. Nie je to dost slanej.
- It’s tasteless. Je to bez chuťov.
- There’s not enough salt in it. Nie je tam dost sůl.
- I’m afraid there’s a fly/hair in my soup. Obávam sa, že v mojej polievke je mokra/vlas.
- This blouse doesn’t suit you. Tato blúzka ti nepríliš ide.
- These shoes don’t go well with your dress. Tieto topánky sa nedajú k tvójim šatám.
- It doesn’t match your skirt at all. Vôbec sa ti to nehodí k sukni.
- What an awful pattern! Ako hrozivý vzor!
- This T-shirt is too tight. Toto tričko je príliš úzké.
- It doesn’t look good on you. Nevyzerá to na tebe dobré.

Box 29: HOW TO ASK FOR INFORMATION (ako žiadať o informáciu)

- Sorry, what/who/where/why/when...? Prepáčte, čo/ktoré/keď/čo/ako/aký...?
- Excuse me, do you know...? Prepáčte, viete/rozumiete...?
- Excuse me, could you tell me...? Prepáčte, môžu by ste mi povedať...?
- I’d like to know/ask if... Chceme/a by som vedel/spytal sa čo...
- Could you tell me how to...? Mohu/a by ste mi povedať ako...?
- Could you give me some information about...? Mohu/a by ste mi informovať o...
- I wonder if you could tell me... Mohu/a by ste mi povedať...

Box 30: HOW TO FILL TIME IN CONVERSATION (ako vyplniť čas počas konverzácie)

- How should I say this? Ako by som mal/a povedať?
- You know, I think that... Viete/vieš, myslím si, že...

Box 31: HOW TO EXPRESS WISHES (ako vyjadriť želanie)

- I wish I saw.../went to... because... Želám sa, aby som videl/a.../šiel/a do... pretože...
- I wish I lived/studied/worked... Želám sa, aby som žil/a/studoval/a/pracoval/a...
- I would really like to see... because... Veľmi rád/a by som videl/a... pretože...
- Once, I would like to live/study/work in... because... Raz, by som rád/a žil/a/studoval/a/pracoval/a... pretože...
**Introductions (Prestavovanie)**
- Allow me to introduce Dr. Smith. This is Mr. Malý.
- Nice to meet you. Welcome to Slovakia.
- Thank you, I'm happy to be here.
- Let me introduce Mr. Parker. This is Mr. Paprčka.
- Pleased to meet you.
- I'd like you to meet my friend, Bob Parker.
- Hello, Bob. I'm Jane.
- Hello. It's a pleasure to meet you.
- Have you met Betty?
- No, I haven't. Hello, Betty. I'm Frank.
- Hello, Frank. I've heard so much about you.
- Have you two met?
- No, we haven't.
- Oh, sorry, George. This is Harry. Harry, this is George.
- Pleased to meet you.
- May I introduce myself? My name is...

**Invitations/Requests (Poznanie/Žiadost – prosba)**

**Acceptance/Refusal (Prijatie/Odmietnutie)**
- Would you like to come for a drive with us tomorrow?
  - Yes, I'd love to. I'd love that very much.
  - I wish I could, but I've got something else on.
- Could I invite you to a movie tonight?
  - Thanks a lot. That sounds great.
  - I'm sorry, but I'm already busy. Maybe some other time.
- What about going for a trip on Sunday?
  - What a great idea! I'd love to.
  - I really would like to, but I'm too busy this weekend. Sorry.
- Would you like to join me for dinner?
  - With pleasure.
  - Certainly.
  - It's very kind of you, but unfortunately I can't.
- Would it disturb you if I opened the window?
  - No, of course not. Go ahead.
  - I'm sorry, but I'd prefer you didn't. It's very noisy outside.
- Would you pass me the pen, please?
  - Yes, of course. Here you are.
  - Thank you.
  - You're welcome.
  - Can you tell me the time?
  - Certainly, it's...
- I'm afraid I can't. I don't have a watch on.
- Can you help me, please?
  - With pleasure. What can I do for you?
  - I'm sorry, but I'm very busy right now. Do you think you could ask someone else?
- Excuse me, may I smoke here?
  - Of course you can.
  - Well, you are allowed to, but I'd rather you didn't.
  - I'm sorry, but it's not allowed in this part of the building.
- I'm sorry to trouble you, but I'm lost. Do you think you could help me?
  - Yes, certainly. Where are you trying to get to?
  - I'm sorry, but I'm a stranger here, myself.

**Expressing thanks (Podakovanie)**
- You've been very kind. Thank you.
- It was my pleasure.
- Thank you very much for your advice.
- You're welcome.
- I'm very grateful to you for helping me.
- Don't mention it, I'm glad I could help.
- That was very nice of you. Thank you.
- Really, it was nothing. You don't need to thank me.
- Thanks for the invitation.
- You're welcome.
- Thank you for coming.
- Thank you for a wonderful meal.
- Thank you for seeing/walking me home.
- It was a pleasure.
- Thank you for a very pleasant evening.
- It was really nice having you here with us. We hope to see you again soon.

**Apologies (Ospravedlnenie sa)**
- Excuse me, please.
- Of course, forget it.
- I'm very sorry.
- That's quite all right.
- Sorry I'm late.
- It's okay, don't worry about it.
- Sorry, I forgot to tell you.
- Don't worry about it.
- Excuse me for being late.
- Never mind. That's okay.
- I'm afraid I won't be able to come tomorrow.
- Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
- Just a minute. I'll be right back.
- It's all right. I'm in no hurry.

**Misunderstandings (Nedorozumenie)**

- Excuse me, are you Mr. Smith?
- No, I'm not. There must be some mistake.
- Oh, sorry.
- That's all right.
- Excuse me, I'm looking for Mr. Blake.
- Sorry, he's not here right now. Can I help you?

**Agreement and disagreement (Vyjadrenie súhlasu a nesúhlasu)**

- It's a nice day, isn't it?
  - Yes, it is.
  - It looks like rain, doesn't it?
  - I'm afraid it does.
  - I hope not.
- Nasty day, isn't it?
  - Oh yes, dreadful.
- You don't mind walking, don't you?
  - No, of course not.
  - Well, not really. I'd prefer to go by car.
- That's a nice dress.
  - Thank you, it's so kind of you to say so.
- Tom will be surprised.
  - Yes, I think he will.
- He'll be angry.
  - Yes, I'm afraid he will.
  - Yes, I expect so.
  - No, don't worry, he'll be fine about it.
- Rose will be on time.
  - Yes, I hope so.
  - Well, unfortunately, she might not be, she isn't very punctual.
SHORT SUMMARY OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR
stručný přehled anglické gramatiky

MORPHOLOGY • MORFOLÓGIA

Noun • Podstatné meno


- John is my friend. – He is my friend.
- Where is your sister? – Where is she?
- This book is new. – It is new.
- The dog is small – It is small.


a) tomato – tomatoes
potato – potatoes
hero – heroes

b) lady – ladies
body – bodies

- ale: piano – pianos
dynamo – dynamos
photo – photos

- ale: key – keys
monkey – monkeys

- ale: cliff – cliffs
roof – roofs

- ale: Roman – Romans
German – Germans

c) life – lives
wife – wives
knife – knives
shelf – shelves

d) child – children

- Niektoré podstatné mená sa používaú len v množnom čísle. Napr. people, glasses, jeans, trousers, clothes a pod.
ARTICLES • ČLENY
Pred podstatným menom v angličtine sa spravidla používa člen. 
Neurčitý člen má tvar a pred slovom, ktoré začíná vyslovenou spoluhláskou (a day, a dog, a university) a tvar an pred slovom, ktoré začíná vyslovenou samohláskou (an apple, an English textbook, an hour).
Neurčitý člen sa používa pred podstatnými menami v jednotnom čísle vtedy, keď o veciach, osobách alebo pojmoch hovoríme všeobecne alebo po prvkrát. Používa sa po výrazoch there is a a vo výrazoch a little, a few, a lot of, po výrazoch half, such, quite, what, ak po nich nasleduje podstatné meno počítateľné v jednotnom čísle.

Pozor! Neurčitý člen sa nepoužíva pred podstatnými menami v množnom čísle.

Určitý člen the sa vyslovuje [θiː] pred slovom, ktoré začíná vyslovenou samohláskou (the apple) a [ð] pred slovom, ktoré začíná vyslovenou spoluhláskou (the day). Určitý člen sa používa s podstatnými menami v jednotnom i množnom čísle vtedy, ak ide o pojmy, osoby a veci známe z kontextu. Používa sa pred názvami niektorých krajín, pohori, oceánov, riek, pred názvami národov, múzeí, divadel, kin, hotelov, reštaurácií, pred názvami jedinečných vecí, pred prídomkami menami vo funkcii podstatných mién a v mnohých frázach s predložkou of. Anglický určitý člen sa niekedy prekladá do slovenčiny ukazovacím zámenom.

Pozor! Žiadny člen nedávame pred podstatné meno s ukazovacím alebo privlastňovacím zámenom.

Napr. a book – this book
the family – my family
an English textbook – his English textbook

Bez členu sa používajú:
- vlastné meno – Prague, Jane, Europe...
- abstraktné a nepočítateľné – love, friendship, time...
- látkové – coffee, flour, water...
- dni v týždni – Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday...
- mesiace – January, February, March...
- ročné obdobia – spring, summer, autumn, winter
- denné jedlá – breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper...
- členovia rodiny – Mother, Father...
- jazyky – English, Spanish, Russian...
- školské predmety – Maths, Biology, Chemistry...
- vedné odbory – linguistics, microbiology, medicine...
- športy – tennis, hockey, golf...
- farby – white, blue, red, black...
- ustálené slovné spojenia – at home, at school, at work...

Pronoun • Zámeno

Personal Pronouns • Osobné zámeny

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jednotné číslo (singular)</th>
<th>Podmetový pád (Common Case)</th>
<th>Predmetový pád (Objective Case)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, she, it</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him, her, it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Množné číslo (plural)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jednotné číslo (singular)</th>
<th>Podmetový pád (Common Case)</th>
<th>Predmetový pád (Objective Case)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possessive Pronouns • Prílastňovací zámeny

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nesamostatné (With nouns)</th>
<th>Samostatné (Without nouns)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jednotné číslo (singular)</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his, her, its</td>
<td>his, hers, its</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Množné číslo (plural)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jednotné číslo (plural)</th>
<th>Podmetový pád (Common Case)</th>
<th>Predmetový pád (Objective Case)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reflexive & Emphatic Pronouns • Zvratné a zdôrazňovacie zámeny

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jednotné číslo (singular)</th>
<th>1. myself</th>
<th>2. yourself</th>
<th>3. himself, herself, itself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>množné číslo (plural)</td>
<td>1. ourselves</td>
<td>2. yourselves</td>
<td>3. themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Používa sa:
a) ako zvratné zámen – I've injured myself. – Poranila som sa.
b) na zdôraznenie podmetu – He repairs his car himself. – Auto si opravuje on sám.
Pozor! sám vo význame nikom iný, jediný v angličtine = alone.
Napr. I was there alone. – Bol som tam sám.

Pozor! si vo význame jeden druhému v angličtine = each other (ak ide o dve osoby alebo veci), one another (ak ide o viac osob alebo vecí).

Napr. Jane and Mary helped each other.
The boys in the classroom do not communicate with one another.

Demonstrative Pronouns • Ukazovacie zámená

Ukazovacie zámená v angličtine sú zhodné pre všetky rody, majú však odlišné tvary v jednotnom a v množnom čísle a lúšia sa i podľa toho, či poukazujú na osoby, predmety a jazy časovo alebo priestorovo bližšie alebo vzádnejšie.

- this, these – poukazujú na osoby, predmety a jazy časovo alebo priestorovo bližšie.
- that, those – poukazujú na osoby, predmety a jazy časovo alebo priestorovo vzádnejšie.

Indefinite Pronouns • Neurčité zámená

- Some + podstatné meno (nietkory, nejaký), somebody, someone (nietko), something (niečo), somewhere (niekde, niekam) – používajú sa v kladných oznamovacích vecách a v otázkách, na ktoré očakávame kladnú odpoveď. – Will you have some more coffee?

- Any + podstatné meno (akýkoľvek, hociktorý), anybody, anyone (hoci kto, ktokoľvek), anything (čokoliek, hocičo), anywhere (kdekoľvek, kamkolvek) – používané v kladných vecách a v otázkách, na ktoré očakávame kladnú odpoveď. Viede znamenajú nejaký, niekoľko, niečo a niekam a v záporných vecách (not any), viede znamenajú žiadny, ničko, nič, niekde, niekam.

- No + podstatné meno (žiadný), none (žiadny), nobody (nikto), no one (žiadny), nothing (nič), nowhere (nikde, nikam) – používané sa len v zápornom význame.

Pozor! V anglickej vete môže byť len jeden zápor.

Napr. Nobody was there. – Nikto tam neboli.

I understand nothing. – Nerozumím ničomu.

- Every + podstatné meno (každý), everybody, everyone (každý), everything (všetko), everywhere (vsade) – používané sa v kladných oznamovacích vecách a otázkách a záporných vecách.

Pozor! every = každý – nemôžu sa používať samostatne, musí po ňom nasledovať podstatné meno, má funkciu prídavného mena.
everyone = každý – môže byť samostatné, má funkciu podstatného mena.
everybody = každý – môže byť samostatné, má funkciu podstatného mena.

- Each – každý z určitého počtu (each of).

- The other – s podstatným menom v jednotnom čísle – the other book = tá druhá kniha.
- Other – s podstatným menom v množnom čísle – other books = iné knihy.
- The other – s podstatným menom v množnom čísle – the other books = tie ostatné knihy.
- Others – bez podstatného mena, samostatne – Others were reading. – Ostatní čitali.
- The others – bez podstatného mena, samostatne – The others went home. Ti ostatní (zvyšní) šli domov.
- Else – používa sa po neurčitom, opytovacom zámene alebo po príslovke.
- Somebody else = niekoľko iné (v kladnej oznamovej vete)
- Anybody else = niekoľko iné (v opytovacovej vete)
- Anybody else = niekoľko iné (v kladnej oznamovej vete)
- Nothing else = nič iné
- Somewhere else = niekoľko inde

- Both – obaja – vo väzbe both... and znamenajú aj... aj

Napr. I heard them both. – Počuli som oboch.
Mary speaks both English and Spanish. – Mária hovoril aj po anglicky aj po španielsky.

- Either... ten i ten, každý (z dvoch) – vo väzbe either... or znamenajú bud... alebo, v zápornej vete ani... ani.

Napr. Either of the two examples is correct. – Každý z tých dvoch príkladov je správný.

You can either stay or go now. – Môžete teraz zostať alebo odešť.
Neither... žiadny (z dvoch), ani jeden – vo väzbe neither... nor znamenajú ani... ani.

Napr. Neither of the two men can speak English. – Ani jeden z tých dvoch mužov nehovorí po anglicky.

Napr. many houses, many streets, how many children.

Napr. much work, much love, how much time.

- Few – málo – používa sa pred počítateľnými podstatnými menami v množnom čísle.
Napr. few girls – málo dievčat, few people – málo ľudí.

Pozor! a few girls – niekolko dievčat.

• Little – málo – používa sa pred nepočítateľnými podstatnými menami v jednotnom čísle.
Napr. little water – málo vody, little time – málo času.

Pozor! a little water – trochu vody.

**Interrogative Pronouns • Opytovacie zámená**

• Who – kto, koho, komu – používa sa pri osobách.
Napr. Who is that man? – Kto je ten muž?
  Who are you waiting for? – Na koho čakáš?
  Who did you give the book to? – Komu si dal tú knihu?

• Whom – koho – používa sa po predložkách, len pre osoby, častejšie sa však používa who namesto whom.
Napr. From whom did you get that ring? = Who did you get that ring from? – Od koho si dostala ten prsteň?
  For whom is this pullover? = Who is this pullover for? – Pre koho je tento pulóver?

• Whose – či – používa sa len pre osoby.
Napr. Whose address do you want? – Ciu adresu chceš?

• What + sloveso – čo – používa sa po veči a zvieraťa.
Napr. What is this? – Čo je to?

• What + podstatné meno – aký – používa sa len pre veči a zvieraťa.
Napr. What cars do you like? – Aké autá sa ti páčia?

• Which (of) – ktorý – pri výbere z určitého počtu osôb i večí.
Napr. Which of these colours do you like best? – Ktorá z týchto farieb sa ti najviac páčí?

**Relative Pronouns • Vztážné zámená**

• Who – ktorý – len pri osobách.
Napr. That is the girl who lives in London. – To je to dievča, ktoré býva v Londýne.

• Whom – od ktorého, ktorému, o ktorom, s ktorým – len pre osoby – používa sa po predložkách (from whom, to whom, about whom, with whom).
Napr. Is that the boy about whom you were talking? = Is that the boy who you were talking about? – To je ten chlap, o ktorom ste hovorili?

• Which – ktorý – len pre veči, používa sa po rôznych predložkách (of which, to which).
Napr. Did you get the letter which we sent you from New York? – Dostali ste lier, ktorý sme vám poslali z New Yorku?

---

The room into which we entered was very beautiful. – Miestnosť, do ktorej sme vstúpili, bola prekrásna.

Napr. Who is the man that is speaking? – Kto je ten muž, ktorý reční?
Shakespeare is the greatest dramatist that has ever lived. – Shakespeare je najväčší dramatik, ktorý kedy žil.

Pozor! Ak sú vztážné zámená who, which, that predmetom vztážnej vety, možno ich vynechať. Vo vztážných vetách v angličtine existujú presné pravidlá, kedy pred vztážnymi zámenami písme a nepísme čiarku. Čiarku oddeľujeme napríklad vsunutú vetu.

Napr. The boy, about whom you are talking, lives in Boston. – Chlapec, o ktorom hovorite, býva v Bostone.

**Verb • Sloveso**

V angličtine rozoznávame pomocné, spôsobové a plnývýznamové slovesá.

**Auxiliary Verbs • Pomocné slovesá**

*To be, to have, to do* sú používané pri tvoreni rôznych špecifických konštrukcií, napríklad *to be* pri tvorbe pasiva, *to have* pri tvorbe sekundárnych časov, akými sú predpriečny, predminulý čas, *to do* pri tvorbe záporu a otázky plnývýznamových sloves a pod.

**to be - byť**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prítomný čas</th>
<th>otázka</th>
<th>zápor</th>
<th>záporná otázka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jednotné číslo (singular)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I am</td>
<td>am I?</td>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>am I not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you are</td>
<td>are you?</td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>are you not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he/she/it is</td>
<td>is he/she/it?</td>
<td>he/she/it is not</td>
<td>is he/she/it not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>množné číslo (plural)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. we are</td>
<td>are we?</td>
<td>we are not</td>
<td>are we not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you are</td>
<td>are you?</td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>are you not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. they are</td>
<td>are they?</td>
<td>they are not</td>
<td>are they not?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to have • mat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jednotné číslo (singular)</th>
<th>prítomný čas</th>
<th>otázka</th>
<th>zápor</th>
<th>záporná otázka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have</td>
<td>have?</td>
<td>I have not</td>
<td>have I not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have</td>
<td>have you?</td>
<td>you have not</td>
<td>you have not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has</td>
<td>has he/she/it?</td>
<td>he/she/it has not</td>
<td>has he/she/it has not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>množné číslo (plural)</th>
<th>prítomný čas</th>
<th>otázka</th>
<th>zápor</th>
<th>záporná otázka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we have</td>
<td>have we?</td>
<td>we have not</td>
<td>we have not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have</td>
<td>have you?</td>
<td>you have not</td>
<td>you have not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>have they?</td>
<td>they have not</td>
<td>they have not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

to do • robí

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jednotné číslo (singular)</th>
<th>prítomný čas</th>
<th>otázka</th>
<th>zápor</th>
<th>záporná otázka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I do</td>
<td>do?</td>
<td>I do not</td>
<td>do I not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>do you?</td>
<td>you do not</td>
<td>you do not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it does</td>
<td>does he/she/it?</td>
<td>he/she/it does not</td>
<td>does he/she/it does not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>množné číslo (plural)</th>
<th>prítomný čas</th>
<th>otázka</th>
<th>zápor</th>
<th>záporná otázka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we do</td>
<td>do we?</td>
<td>we do not</td>
<td>we do not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>do you?</td>
<td>you do not</td>
<td>you do not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they do</td>
<td>do they?</td>
<td>they do not</td>
<td>they do not?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modal Verbs • SpoSobové slovesa

Can – můžem, may – sám, must – musím nemají tvar neurčitku. Samotně nemají plný význam, ale vyjadřují postoj hovorícího k deju.

- Používají sa s plnouvýznamovými slovesami, ktoré sa k ním pripájajú bez časti ce to.
  
Napr. We must go there.

- Pri časovaní v prítomnom čase majú vo všetkých osobách rovnaký tvar – can, may, must. Nepridávajú sa k nim žiadne koncovky.
  
Napr. I can drive a car. He can drive a car. We can drive a car. I must do it. He must do it. They must do it.

- Pri tvoreni otázky je na prvom mieste spôsobové sloveso, potom nasleduje podmet a plnouvýznamové sloveso.
  
Napr. Can you swim well?
Záporná otázka sa pri spôsobových slovesách prakticky nevyužitá. Výnimkou môže byť vyjadrenie počúvania, údivu a pod.

- Tvoreni záporu:
  I cannot – nemôžem
  I must – musím
  I may – sám
  I must not – neslávem

- Spôsobové slovesá must a may majú i prenesený význam. Určitosť, istotu môžeme vyjadriť pomocou must + neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to. Možnosť, pravdepodobnosť môžeme vyjadriť pomocou may + neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to.
  
Napr. He must come. – Určite pride.
He may come. – Možno pride.

- Určitosť či istotu v minulom čase možno vyjadriť pomocou must + minulý neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to. Možnosť, pravdepodobnosť v minulom čase možno vyjadriť pomocou may + minulý neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to.
  
Napr. He must have come. – Určite prišiel.
He may have come. – Možno prišiel.

- Spôsobové sloveso must nemá tvary budúceho ani minulého času. Spôsobové slovesá can a may majú nepravidelný tvar minulého času – could a might. Je to zároveň podmienkou sloves (I could = mohol som, mohol by som, I might = smel som, smel by som). Na vyjadrenie minulých a budúcich dejov sa používajú opisné tvary spôsobových sloves.
  
Can – to be able to
must – to have to
may – to be allowed to

Minulý čas:
I was able to do it. – Mohol/-la som to urobiť.
I had to talk about it. – Musel/Musela som o tom hovorit.
I was allowed to see him. – Smel/-a som ho navštíviť.

Budúci čas:
I’ll be able to do it. – Budem to môcť urobiť.
I’ll have to talk about it. – Budem o tom musieť hovorit.
I’ll be allowed to see him. – Budem ho smieť navštíviť.

Pozor! Pri opisnom tvare to have to v prítomnom i minulom čase tvoríme zápor pomocou do not, does not, did not (don’t, doesn’t, didn’t).
  
Napr. I don’t have to go there. – Nemusim tam ist.
Peter doesn’t have to go there. – Peter tam nemusí ist.
We didn’t have to go there. – Nemuseli sme tam ist.

Full Verbs • Plnouvýznamové slovesa

Rozdeľujú sa na pravidelné (regular) a nepravidelné (irregular).
Pravidelné slovesá tvoria jednoduché a priebehové časy a tvary trpnhého rodu takto:

- Spôsobové slovesá must a may majú i prenesený význam. Určitosť, istotu môžeme vyjadriť pomocou must + neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to. Možnosť, pravdepodobnosť môžeme vyjadriť pomocou may + neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to.
  
Napr. He must come. – Určite pride.
He may come. – Možno pride.

- Určitosť či istotu v minulom čase možno vyjadriť pomocou must + minulý neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to. Možnosť, pravdepodobnosť v minulom čase možno vyjadriť pomocou may + minulý neurčitok plnouvýznamového slovesa bez to.
  
Napr. He must have come. – Určite prišiel.
He may have come. – Možno prišiel.

- Spôsobové sloveso must nemá tvary budúceho ani minulého času. Spôsobové slovesá can a may majú nepravidelný tvar minulého času – could a might. Je to zároveň podmienkou sloves (I could = mohol som, mohol by som, I might = smel som, smel by som). Na vyjadrenie minulých a budúcich dejov sa používajú opisné tvary spôsobových sloves.
  
Can – to be able to
must – to have to
may – to be allowed to

Minulý čas:
I was able to do it. – Mohol/-la som to urobiť.
I had to talk about it. – Musel/Musela som o tom hovorit.
I was allowed to see him. – Smel/-a som ho navštíviť.

Budúci čas:
I’ll be able to do it. – Budem to môcť urobiť.
I’ll have to talk about it. – Budem o tom musieť hovorit.
I’ll be allowed to see him. – Budem ho smieť navštíviť.

Pozor! Pri opisnom tvare to have to v prítomnom i minulom čase tvoríme zápor pomocou do not, does not, did not (don’t, doesn’t, didn’t).
  
Napr. I don’t have to go there. – Nemusim tam ist.
Peter doesn’t have to go there. – Peter tam nemusí ist.
We didn’t have to go there. – Nemuseli sme tam ist.

Full Verbs • Plnouvýznamové slovesa

Rozdeľujú sa na pravidelné (regular) a nepravidelné (irregular).
Pravidelné slovesá tvoria jednoduché a priebehové časy a tvary trpnhého rodu takto:
PRESENT TENSE – PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS

1. PRESENT SIMPLE – Jednoduchý prítomný čas vyjadruje pravidelne sa opakujúci dej v prítomnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: every day, twice a month, on Fridays, at weekends, in the morning, at night, never, usually, occasionally, rarely, sometimes, often, always, etc.

Napríklad: I play tennis every Friday.

2. PRESENT SIMPLE CONTINUOUS – Priebehový prítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebieha práve v tejto chvíli alebo v tomto období.

Spája sa s výrazmi: now, at the moment, nowadays, at present, currently, today, this week, always, still, etc.

Napríklad: I am playing tennis now.

### PRESENT TENSE – MINULÝ ČAS

1. PAST SIMPLE – Jednoduchý minulý čas vyjadruje skončený dej v minulosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: yesterday, last month, then, in 2003, five years ago, when, etc.

(Pre nepravidelné slovesá sa používa 2. stĺpec)

Napríklad: I played tennis yesterday.

2. PAST CONTINUOUS – Priebehový minulý čas vyjadruje, čo sa v danom čase v minulosti odohrávalo.

Spája sa s výrazmi: yesterday at 10 a.m., while, when, as, etc.

Napríklad: I was playing tennis yesterday at 10 a.m.

- vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebiehal naraz s iným krátkodobým minulým dejom (past simple):
  Napríklad: I was playing tennis when I broke my leg.

- vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebiehal naraz s iným dlhšie trvajúcim minulým dejom (past continuous):
  Napríklad: I was playing tennis while my brother was watching television.

### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE – PREDPRÍTOMNÝ ČAS


(Pre nepravidelné slovesá sa používa 3. stĺpec)

Spája sa s výrazmi: already, recently, never, ever, since, for, how long so far, just, yet (in negative sentences), today, etc.

Napríklad: I have played tennis for an hour. (Hral som, už nehrávám.) – dej je ukončený

2. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS – Priebehový predprítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý začal v minulosti a stále prebieha a má tendenciu pretrvávať i v budúcnosti. Doba trvania je bližšie určená. Dôraz sa kladie na príbeh dej.

Spája sa s výrazmi: how long, since, for...
**Například:** I am tired. I have been playing tennis for two hours. (Ešte stále hrám.) – dej ešte prebieha, kontext v prítomnosti.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jednoduchý tvar</th>
<th>trpný rod</th>
<th>priebehový tvar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jednotné číslo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I have asked</td>
<td>I have been asked</td>
<td>I have been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you have asked</td>
<td>you have been asked</td>
<td>you have been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he has asked</td>
<td>he has been asked</td>
<td>he has been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>množné číslo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. we have asked</td>
<td>we have been asked</td>
<td>we have been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you have asked</td>
<td>you have been asked</td>
<td>you have been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. they have asked</td>
<td>they have been asked</td>
<td>they have been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otázka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I have not asked</td>
<td>I have not been asked</td>
<td>I have not been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you have not asked</td>
<td>you have not been asked</td>
<td>you have not been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he has not asked</td>
<td>he has not been asked</td>
<td>he has not been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zápor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I have not asked</td>
<td>I have not been asked</td>
<td>I have not been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you have not asked</td>
<td>you have not been asked</td>
<td>you have not been asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he has not asked</td>
<td>he has not been asked</td>
<td>he has not been asking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE TENSE – BUDÚCI ČAS**

1. **FUTURE SIMPLE** – Jednoduchý budúci čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa určite stane v budúcnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, tonight, in two days, in a week, next month, soon, etc.

Napríklad: I will play tennis tomorrow.

- vyjadruje sa ním aj náhle rozhodnutie: I am hungry. I will eat something
- vyjadruje sa ním aj nádej, sľub, predpoveďanie, varovanie, žiadosť: I hope she will come in time.
- I am sure he will pass the test.

2. **FUTURE CONTINUOUS** – Priebehový budúci čas vyjadruje budúci dej, ktorý bude prebiehať v bližšie určenej budúcnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: tomorrow, tomorrow at 6 p.m., the day after tomorrow, tonight, in two days, in a week, next month, this time next month, soon, etc.

Napríklad: I will be playing tennis tomorrow at 6 p.m.

Pozn. V 1. osobe jednotného čísla sa používa "shall" aj "will".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jednoduchý tvar</th>
<th>trpný rod</th>
<th>priebehový tvar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jednotné číslo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I shall ask</td>
<td>I shall be asked</td>
<td>I shall be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you will ask</td>
<td>you will be asked</td>
<td>you will be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he will ask</td>
<td>he will be asked</td>
<td>he will be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>množné číslo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. we shall ask</td>
<td>we shall be asked</td>
<td>we shall be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you will ask</td>
<td>you will be asked</td>
<td>you will be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. they will ask</td>
<td>they will be asked</td>
<td>they will be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otázka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. shall I ask?</td>
<td>shall I be asked?</td>
<td>shall I be asking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. will you ask?</td>
<td>will you be asked?</td>
<td>will you be asking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. will he ask?</td>
<td>will he be asked?</td>
<td>will he be asking?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conditional Mood • Podmíneční spôsob

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jednotný tvar</th>
<th>priebehový tvar</th>
<th>trpný rod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I shall not ask</td>
<td>I shall not be asked</td>
<td>I shall not be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you will not ask</td>
<td>you will not be asked</td>
<td>you will not be asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he will not ask</td>
<td>he will not be asked</td>
<td>he will not be asking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

množné číslo (plural)

| 1. we should ask | I should be asked | you would be asked |
| 2. you would ask | we should be asked | they would be asked |
| 3. they would ask | should I be asked? | would he be asked? |

otázka

| 1. should I ask? | I should be asking | you would be asking |
| 2. would you ask? | we should be asking | they would be asked |
| 3. would he ask? | should I be asked? | would he be asked? |

zápor

| 1. I should not ask | I should not be asked | I should not be asking |
| 2. you will not ask | you will not be asked | you will not be asking |
| 3. he will not ask | he will not be asked | he will not be asking |

Syntax • Syntax

Word Order • Slovosled

Slovosled anglické vety je pevný. V kladně oznamovací vety musí být na prvom mieste podmet, za ním následuje príslovok a predmet. Príslovkové určenie času môže byť pred podmetom, na samom začiatku vety alebo úplne na konci vety. Príslovkové určenie miesta a spôsobu býva často na konci vety.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Príslovkové určenie času</th>
<th>Podmet</th>
<th>Príslovok</th>
<th>Predmet</th>
<th>Príslovkové určenie miesta, času, spôsobu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last year</td>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>attended</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>in London.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tzv. krátké príslovky – often, usually, never, ever, already, seldom, sometimes, soon, then, still, just – stojí po vete vždy po pomocnom alebo spôsobovom slovese, ale vždy pred plnôvýznamovým slovesom.

Napr. She could never go there alone.

He is always ready to help his friends.

- Obratený slovosled sa vyskytuje vo výzbe there is/there are.

Napr. There are many people in the street.

V opytovacích vétách je takýto slovosled:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opytovacie zámene</th>
<th>Pomocné spôsobové sloveso</th>
<th>Podmet</th>
<th>Plnôvýznamové sloveso</th>
<th>Predmet</th>
<th>Príslovkové určenie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>now?</td>
<td>early?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>here?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>their work?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>that letter?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sequence of Tenses • Súsestnosť časov

Súsestnosť časov sa vyskytuje v anglické vety, keď je sloveso v hlavnej vete v minulom čase. Ak je sloveso v hlavnej vete v pútnom čase, vo vedľajšej vete sa časy nemenia.

Napr. Viem, že sa myli. – I know (that) she is wrong.

Vedel som, že sa myli. – I knew (that) she was wrong.

Súsestnosť časov sa najčastejšie vyskytuje pri zmene prvej reči na nepriamú a pri zmene priamej otázky na nepriamú.

V slovenčine sa priama reč mení na nepriamu veľmi lako. Mení sa iba 1. osoba na 3. osobu.


Povedal: „Nemám čas.“ – Povedal, že nemá čas.

V anglické sa lako premieňa priama reč na nepriamú iba vtedy, ak je sloveso v hlavnej vete v pútnom čase.

Napr. He says: "I have no time." – He says that he has no time.

Ak je ale sloveso v hlavnej vete v minulom čase, v nepriamej reči sa mení čas vedľajšej vety takto:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pútný čas</th>
<th>Minulý čas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He said: &quot;I have no time.&quot;</td>
<td>He said that he had no time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Povedal: „Nemám čas.“</td>
<td>Povedal, že nemá čas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minulý čas</th>
<th>Predminulý čas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She said: &quot;I worked.&quot;</td>
<td>She said that she had worked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Povedala: „Pracovala som.“</td>
<td>Povedala, že pracovala.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Poznámka:** spôsob that možno vynéchať.

**Pozor!** V nepriamej reči sa menia niektoré ukazovacie zámená a príslovy miesta a času takto:

- **this** → **that**; **these** → **those**; **here** → **there**; **now** → **then**; **today** → **that day**; **tomorrow** → **the next day**; **yesterday** → **the day before**; **ago** → **before**; **next week** → **the following week**.

Pri premene priamej otázky na nepriamou otázku platia tie isté posuny času.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>priťomný čas</th>
<th>minulý čas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>predpriečny čas</td>
<td>minulý čas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budúcný čas</td>
<td>podmienkový spôsob</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Priamym i nepriamym otázkam uvádza sloveso to ask. Ak je v priamej otázke opytovacie zámeno - who, what, which alebo opytovacie príslovka - when, where, ponecháva me ich aj v nepriamej otázke. V ostatných prípadoch používame spojky if = či alebo whether = či.

**Napr.** He asked: “Which do you like?”

- Spýtal sa, ktorá sa mi páči.
- She asked: “Do you like it?”
- She asked whether I liked it. - Spytala sa, či sa mi to pácí.

**Pozor!** V nepriamej otázke platia tie isté pravidlá slovesludu ako v oznamo- vacej vete, tzn. že podmet musí stáť pred prísudkom.

**Napr.** He asked: “Where is your pen?”

- Spýtal sa kde je moje pero.
- She asked me: “What is the news?”
- She asked me what the news was. - Spytal sa, čo je nového.
- He asked: “What time is it?”
- He asked what time it was. - Spytal sa, koľko je hodin.

**Pozor!** Nepriamý rozkaz sa vyskytuje v anglickom po slovesách to ask = požiadať, to order = prikázať a to tell = povedať (aby niečo urobiť). Tvorí sa pomocou neurčitku pilnovýznamového slovesa. Ide o skrátenie vedľajší vety neurčitkom.

Napr. He ordered me: “Give me your book.”

He ordered me to give him my book. = Prikázal mi, aby som mu dal svoju knihu.
He told me: “Come at seven.”
He told me to come at seven. = Povedal mi, aby som prišiel o siedmej.

**Conditional Clauses • Podmienkové vety**

V angličtine existujú podmienky reálne a nereálne. Reálna podmienka sa týka budúcnosti (I. typ podmienkových viet). Nereálna podmienka môže byť v prítomnosti (II. typ podmienkových viet) alebo v minulosti (III. typ podmienkových viet).

**I. typ podmienkových viet** - reálna podmienka v budúcnosti. V hlavnej vete sa používa budúcný čas a vo vedľajšej vete, tzn. po spojke if, prítomný čas.

Napr. If I have time, I shall do it. = I shall do it if I have time.

- Ak budem mať čas, urobim to.

**II. typ podmienkových viet** - nereálna podmienka v prítomnosti. V hlavnej vete sa používa podmienovací spôsob a vo vedľajšej vete, tzn. po spojke if, minulý čas.

Napr. If I had time, I would do it. = I would do it if I had time.

- Kedy som mal čas, urobil by som to.

**III. typ podmienkových viet** - nereálna podmienka v minulosti. V hlavnej vete sa používa minulý podmienovací spôsob a vo vedľajšej vete, tzn. po spojke if, predminulý čas.

Napr. If I had had time, I would have done it.

= I would have done it if I had had time.

- Kedy som bol mal/v minulosti, bol/a by som to urobí/a.

**Time Clauses • Časové vety**

V časových vétách sa používajú v angličtine všetky časy okrem budúceho. Platí teda pravidlo, že vo vedľajší vete po časových spojkach when, till, after, until, before, while, as soon as sa nesmie použiť budúci čas.

Napr. I’ll come as soon as I can.

- Príde hned ako budem môcť.

I’ll call you after I return.

- Zavolám tě, potom ako sa vrátim.

Will you come to see us before you leave?

- Prídeš nás navštíviť, skôr nez odlídeš?

**Purpose Clauses • Účelové vety**

Účelové vety sú v angličtine uvedené výrazmi in order to (za účelom, aby), as to (aby), to (aby), not to (aby nie), in order that (za tým účelom, aby), so that (aby), that (aby).
**IRREGULAR VERBS**

zoznam nepravidelných slovies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Slovak</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Slovak</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Slovak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arise [arz] vzniknúť</td>
<td>arose [aʊz]</td>
<td>arisen [əzn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awake [əwek] prebudíť</td>
<td>awoke [əwaʊk]</td>
<td>awoken [ə'waʊkn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be [bi] byť</td>
<td>was [waz]</td>
<td>been [ben]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear [bɛə] uniest', zniesť</td>
<td>bore [boə]</td>
<td>borne [bən]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat [bɛt] bitť, tlať</td>
<td>beat [bɛt]</td>
<td>beaten [bɛtn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become [bɪkam] stať sa</td>
<td>became [bɪ'kæm]</td>
<td>become [bɪkam]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin [bɪ'gɪn] začať</td>
<td>began [bɪ'ɡæn]</td>
<td>begun [bɪ'ɡæn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend [bɛnd] ohnutť</td>
<td>bent [bɛnt]</td>
<td>bent [bɛnt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite [bɪt] hryzť</td>
<td>bit [bɪt]</td>
<td>bitten [bɪtn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed [bled] krvácať</td>
<td>bled [bled]</td>
<td>bled [bled]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [bloʊ] fúkať</td>
<td>blew [blu]</td>
<td>blown [blaun]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break [brek] zlomiť</td>
<td>broke [broke]</td>
<td>broken [broke]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring [brɪŋ] prieníst, priniesť</td>
<td>brought [brot]</td>
<td>brought [brot]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build [blɪd] stavatť</td>
<td>built [bɪlt]</td>
<td>built [bɪlt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn [bɜrn] horieť, páliť</td>
<td>burned [bɜrn], burnt [bɜːnt]</td>
<td>burned [bɜrn], burnt [bɜːnt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst [bɜːst] vybuchnúť</td>
<td>burst [bɜːst]</td>
<td>burst [bɜːst]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy [bju] kupiť</td>
<td>bought [bɔt]</td>
<td>bought [bɔt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch [kætʃ] chyťť</td>
<td>caught [kɔt]</td>
<td>caught [kɔt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose [ʃuːz] vybrať</td>
<td>chose [ʃuz]</td>
<td>chosen [ʃuzn]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come [kʌm] pristť</td>
<td>came [kæm]</td>
<td>came [kæm]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost [kɒst] stát (o cene)</td>
<td>cost [kɔst]</td>
<td>cost [kɔst]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep [kriːp] plazíť sa</td>
<td>crept [krep]</td>
<td>crept [krep]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal [diːl] zaobierať sa, obchodovalť</td>
<td>dealt [diəlt]</td>
<td>dealt [diəlt]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
think [θɪŋk] myšlet
thought [θɔːt] thought [θɔːt]

throw [θraʊ] hodit
threw [θru] thrown [θruːn]

understand [ʌnθər'dɑːnd] understood [ʌndər'stɒd]

wake [weɪk] zhubnout
woke [wəʊk] woken [wəʊkn]

wear [weə] nosit (oblečenie)
wore [wɔːr] worn [wɔrn]

weep [wiːp] plakat
wept [wiːpt] wept [wiːpt]

win [wɪn] získať, vyhrať
won [wʌn] won [wʌn]

withdraw [waɪd'rɔːr] odtiahnuť,
vybrať (peniaze z účtu)
withdrew [waɪd'rɔːr] withdrawn [waɪd'raʊn]

withhold [waɪð'hould] odopriť,
odmietnout
withheld [waɪ'dhɔld] withheld [waɪd'hɔld]

withstand [waɪθ'stænd] odoláť,
vyrážť
withstood [waɪð'stɔd] withstood [waɪd'stɔd]

write [raɪt] písať
wrote [raʊt] written [rɪtn]

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE
The pronunciations written in this book are based on British English.

Vowels • Samohlásky

| 1 | it, tick | o: | four, saw | or | boy, poison |
| 2 | see, be | u: | pull, wood | au | house, cow |
| 3 | bed, said | aʊ | pool | aʊ | ear, beer |

Consonants • Spoluhalásky

<p>| 1 | bar, cabbage | m | my, mum | tf | church, chair |
| 2 | dark, good | n | no, never | ð | this, there |
| 3 | food, offer | ð | thinking, pink | θ | thumb, bath |
| 4 | good, ugly | p | play, upper | v | love, over |
| 5 | be, behind | r | error, rat | w | word, one |
| 6 | yes, spaniel | s | stop, lost | z | zoo, trees |
| 7 | cup, take | t | ship, wish | ʒ | genre, leisure |
| 8 | look, doll | ʃ | talk, white | ʃə | jam, age |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN (podstatné meno)</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE (pridavné meno)</th>
<th>VERB (sloveso)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADVENTURE dobrodružstvo</td>
<td>ADVENTUROUS dobrodružný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARGUMENT argument; hádka</td>
<td>ARGUMENTATIVE hásteený</td>
<td>TO ARGUE diskutovať; hádať sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRIVAL príchod</td>
<td>~</td>
<td>TO ARRIVE prist'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BENEFIT prónos</td>
<td>BENEFICIAL prónosný</td>
<td>TO BENEFIT tážiť (s); profitovať (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOREDOM nuda</td>
<td>BORING nudný; BORED znudnený</td>
<td>TO BORE nudíť; otravovať niekoho; TO BE BORED nudíť sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARE pozornosť; starostlivosť</td>
<td>CAREFUL opatrný; starostlivosť</td>
<td>TO CARE (about); starat sa o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMFORT pohodlí</td>
<td>COMFORTABLE pohodlný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPETITION súťaž; konkurencia</td>
<td>COMPETITIVE konkurencieschopný</td>
<td>TO COMPETE súťažiť; konkurovať</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATIVITY tvorivosť</td>
<td>CREATIVE tvorivý</td>
<td>TO CREATE vytvoriť</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DANGER nebezpečie</td>
<td>DANGEROUS nebezpečný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPENDENCE závislosť</td>
<td>DEPENDENT závislý</td>
<td>TO DEPEND (on); závisieť na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTION opis</td>
<td>DESCRIPTIVE popisný</td>
<td>TO DESCRIBE opisť</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIFFERENCE rozdiel</td>
<td>DIFFERENT odlišný</td>
<td>TO DIFFER líšiť sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIFFICULT problém; tažkosť</td>
<td>DIFFICULT tažký; zložitý</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPATHY súcit</td>
<td>EMPATHIC empátický; súcitný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENJOYMENT radost; potešenie</td>
<td>ENJOYABLE radostný; prijemný</td>
<td>TO ENJOY mat'rad'; mat'radost z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTERTAINMENT zábava</td>
<td>ENTERTAINING zábavný</td>
<td>TO ENTERTAIN zabíťvať</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTRANCE vstup</td>
<td>~</td>
<td>TO ENTER vstúpiť</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCITEMENT rozrušenie; následenie</td>
<td>EXCITING vzrušujúci; EXCITED následený</td>
<td>TO EXCITE náschmut'; vzbuďť následenie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAME sláva</td>
<td>FAMOUS slávny</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINANCES financie</td>
<td>FINANCIAL finančný</td>
<td>TO FINANCE financovať</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLEXIBILITY pružnosť</td>
<td>FLEXIBLE pružný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOREIGNER cudzinec</td>
<td>FOREIGN cudzí</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQUENCY frekvencia; časťost</td>
<td>FREQUENT častý; obvyklý</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAPPINESS šťastie</td>
<td>HAPPY šťastný</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAT horúčava</td>
<td>HOT horúci</td>
<td>TO HEAT zohriť; žeraviť</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| HEIGHT výška | HIGH vysoký | TO HEIGHTEN zvýšiť; zosílňať |
| HOSPITALITY pohostinnosť | HOSPITABLE pohostinný | ~ |
| IMPORTANCE dôležitosť; HÚT IMPORTANT dôležitý | ~ |
| INDEPENDENCE nezávislosť | INDEPENDENT nezávislý | ~ |
| INFECTION infekcie; nakazenie | INFECTED infekovaný; nakazený | TO INFECT (with); infikovať; nakazať |
| INHABITANT obyvateľ | INHABITED obyvaný | TO INHABIT obývať |
| INTEGRATION integrácia; začlenenie | INTEGRATED integrovaný; začlenený | TO INTEGRATE integrovať; začleniť |
| INTEREST záujem | INTERESTING zaujímavý | TO BE INTERESTED (in); zaujímať sa o |
| INVITATION pozvania | INVITED pozvaný | TO INVITE pozvať |
| LENGTH dĺžka | LONG dlhý | TO LENGTHEN predĺžiť |
| LIFE život | (A)LIVE živý | TO LIVE žiť |
| LOCATION miesto | LOCAL miestny | TO LOCATE lokalizovať; umiestniť |
| LOSS stratok | LOST stratený | TO LOSE stratiť |
| LUXURY luxus; prepych | LUXURIOUS luxusný; prepychový | ~ |
| MEANING význam; zmysel | MEANINGFUL zmyselný; MEANINGLESS nezmyselný | TO MEAN znamenať |
| MYSTERY záhada | MYSTERIOUS záhadný | ~ |
| OCCASION príležitosť | OCCASIONAL príležitosťný | ~ |
| OWNER majiteľ | OWN vlastný; svoj | TO OWN vlastniť |
| PATIENCE trpeživosť | PATIENT trpeživý | ~ |
| PEACE mier; pokoj | PEACEFUL mierový; pokojový | TO PACIFY upokojuť |
| PERMISSION povolenie | PERMITTED povolený | TO PERMIT povoliť |
| PERSON osoba | PERSONAL osobný | TO PERSONALISE zosobnitiť; prispôsobiť |
| PERSUASION presvedčenie | PERSUASIVE presvedčivý | TO PERSUADE presvedčiť |
| PLACEMENT umiestnenie | PLACED umiestnený | TO PLACE umiestniť; položiť |
| PLAY hra | PLAYFUL hravý | TO PLAY hrať |
| POLLUTION znečistenie | POLLUTED znečistený; POLLUTING znečisťujúci | TO POLLUTE znečistiť |
| PREFERENCE preferencia | PREFERRED preferovaný | TO PREFER preferovať |
| PROFESSION profesia | PROFESSIONAL profesionálny | ~ |
| REACTION reakcia | REACTIVE reagujúci; reaktivný | TO REACT reagovaliť |
| RELAXATION relax; oddych | RELAXING uvolňujúci | TO RELAX relaxovať; oddychovať |
BASIC PHRASAL VERBS
základní frázové slovesá

A
- to apply for - ucházet se o
- to ask for - žádat

B
- to be fired - být propuštěný ze zamestnání
- to be fond of - mít rád
- to be in - být v móde
- to be interested in - zaujímat se o
- to be keen on - velmi se zaujímat o
- to be worried about - strachovat se o
- to break down - pokazit se

C
- to care about - starat se o
- to cross out - vystírnut

D
- to depend on - záležet na
- to dress up - výbíjet se

F
- to fill in - vyplnit
- to find it hard - považovat to za těžké
- to find out - zístit

G
- to get better - zlepšovat se
- to get dressed - obléct se
- to get married - oženit se
- to get off - vystoupit (např. z autobusu)
- to get on - nastoupit (např. do autobusu)
- to get over - překonat
- to get to know - spojit
- to get up - vstaít (z postele)
- to give up - vzdát se (myšlenky)
- to go through - prejít, prožít si
- to grow up - vyrůst

H
- to hand in - odovzdat
- to have in common - mít společné
- to have in mind - mít na mysli

L
- to look after - dávat pozor na
- to look at - pozřít se na
- to look for - hledat
- to look forward to - tešit se na
- to look up - vyhledat

P
- to pick up - vyzdvihnout
- to put off - vyřadit se, odložit
- to put on - obléct se, obut se
- to put on weight - přibrat (o váhe)

R
- to rely on - spoluhnut se na
- to run out of - minút, spotrebovat

S
- to set up - založit (např. firmu)
- to switch off - vypnout
- to switch on - zapnout

T
- to take an exam - robít skúšku
- to take care - dávat pozor na
- to take off - vystířit (letadlo), vyličit si
- to take part in - zúčastnit se
- to take photographs - fotografovat
- to take place - konat se
- to take time - trvat (časovo)
- to turn off - vypnout
- to turn on - zapnout

W
- to wake up - zbudit se
- to write down - zapiš si
Sprievodca dielami anglickej a americkej literatúry

Prenášad vybraných diel anglickej a americkej literatúry v anglickom jazyku. Obsahom je výber z kánonických diel anglickej a americkej literatúry, s ktorými sa študenti počas štúdia na strednej škole už stretli. Jednotlivé kapitoly sú koncipované tak, aby študentovi priblížili reprezentatívne dielo autora v celej jeho širke hlavne slône: z hľadiska obsahu, formy, postavy, časopisov, histórií, hlavie úhydrovej struktúry, symboliky, štýlu, tém i hlavných myšlienkových odkopanej. Súčasťou každej kapitoly je aj stručný životopis autora a zoznam jeho najznámejších diel. Nájdete v nej i malý slovník literárnych termínov v anglickom jazyku s ich slovenskými ekvivalentmi, ktoré určite zaútočujúce či už pri ústnom alebo písomnom prejave.

University English-Language Entrance Exams

Ukážky testov na prijímanie pohovory na štúdium anglického jazyka na vybraných univerzitách, vrátane časti počúvania s porozumením na audiokazetach. Úlohou tejto knižky je pomôcť študentom študijných skôr pri výbere priážuľnej univerzity a priprave na prijímanie skúšku z anglického jazyka.

V hlavnej časti nájdete testy vhodné na pripravu na maturitú po novom. Po nich nasledujú ukážkové testy jednotlivých univerzít:


Ku každému testu sú podrobne vysvetlivky a klúč na overenie správnych odpočtov.

Latinčina – základy + slovníček

Učebnica má 17 riadnych plus 3 opakovací lekcie. Obsahujú základy latinčiny, tvoľovia a klády. Po ich prebratí by mal byť študent pripravený čítat latinské texty, ale aj prekladať jednoduché celky do latinčiny, prípadne a v latinčine samostatne (najmä písomne) vyjadrovať.

Na kontrolu výsledkov cvičení slúži klúč na konci knihy.

Základný kurz je doplnený latinsko-slovenským slovníkom.

Cvičenia sú zoradené podľa oblžností. Aby študent dosiahnul cieľ, ktorý túto učebnica sleduje, je dôležité, aby si presli všetky cvičenia, a to celé, s možnosťou kontroly. Preto je na konci pripojený Klúč s vypracovanými nácvikovými úlohami.

Rusťina – učebnica a cvičebnica

Učebnica ruského jazyka je spracovaná na základe aktuálnych požiadoviek slovenských stredných šôl. Po študočnom verifikovaní učebnice v rôznych formách výuce, sa prepracovala a aktualizovala a doplnila o nácvik písania, ktorý inicioval používatelia učebnice. Na kontrolu výsledkov cvičení slúži klúč na konci knihy.

Texty na doplnkové čítanie sú vysoko informatívne, zamerané na rozvíjanie rečových a intelektualných schopností študenta a podľa zváženia učiteľa sa môžu využiť ako doplnkujúci materiál na vyučovacej hodine.

Podrobné informácie o knihe nájdete na www.enigma.sk – KNIŽNÁ PONUKA.
Nemčina – cvičebnica s CD

Cvičebnica (zbierka testov) k externéj časti maturity – prevýšenie gramatiky a lexiky, čítania s porozumením, počúvania s porozumením a písania.

K cvičebnici čoskoro príbude zbierka úloh k internej časti maturity – jej monologickej aj dialogickéj časti (tvorba monológov, popis obrázku, základné komunikáčne frázy, jednoduché zvádanie komunikatívnych problémov prirodzené a bez strachu).

Podrobné informácie o kníhe nájdiete na www.enigma.sk – KNÍZNA PONUKA

Informatika na maturity

Kníha je určená zaujmom o súhrne a ucelenej vedomosti o oblasti informatiky. Bola vytvorená v prvom rade pre študentov končiacich stredné školu a pripravujúcich sa na maturity a na prijímacie skúšky na vysoké školy. V jej obsahom je však natoľko komplexná, že poskytuje dostatok informácií i čitateľom, ktorí už školské lavice opustili, alebo by si prostredníctvom nej chceli doplniť vedomosti v nižších ročníkoch stredných i vysokých škôl.

Obsah publikácie vznikol na základe vzdelávacích standardov Státneho pedagogického ústavu, na základe analýzy obsahu webových stránok stredných škôl a na ich zverejnených maturitných otázok, na základe požiadaviek vysokých škôl na prijímacie skúšky i na základe skúseností autorov, ktorí absolventov stredných škôl vyučujú na univerzitách.

Francúština – nová maturita

Francúština na novú maturitu, prijímacie pohovory, štátne jazykové skúšky, olympiádu.

- tematické okruhy
- lexicálne cvičenia
- gramatika
- počúvanie s porozumením
- opis obrázku
- situáčne diaľogy

Priložené CD obsahuje nahrávky textov k časti Počúvanie s porozumením.

Podrobné informácie o kníhe nájdiete na www.enigma.sk – KNÍZNA PONUKA

Základy PC + Windows a Office

Základné rozdiely medzi jednotlivými systémami Windows sú v súčasnosti také minimálne, že používateľ, ktorý ovláda jeden z nich, dokáže bez problémov pracovať aj s ostatnými. I keď publikácia obsahuje v názve konkrétne verzie systémov, je užitočnou a z 95 % aj presnou príručkou pre všetky staršie produkty Microsoftu.

Celá kniha je určená skôr laikom ako odborníkom, no svojim obsahom a formou dokáže uspokojiť oba kategórie. Je bohatá vybavená obrázkami a úlohami, ktoré pomáhajú ovládať skupiny jednotlivých programov. Viníme, že aj vďaka tejto publikácii prekročite hranicu a dostanete sa k tým, pre ktorých už počítač nie je strašidlom.
NOVÁ MATURETA

ANGLIČTINA

VYŠŠIA ÚROVEŇ

1. Family
2. Culture and Art
3. Sports and Games
4. Housing
5. Shopping and Services
6. Health Care
7. Travelling
8. Education
9. Jobs
10. Human Relationships
11. People and Nature
12. Science and Technology
13. People and Society
14. Communication and Languages
15. Mass Media
16. The Young and Their World
17. Food
18. Hobbies, Leisure and Lifestyle
19. Multicultural Society
20. Towns and Places
21. Fashion
22. The Book – the Friend of People
23. Idols and Celebrities
24. English-Speaking Countries
25. Slovakia – My Homeland

Čo uvažujete?

PLUS AÚDIONAHRAVKA

Andres Billiková
Conrad Tott
Sofia Preložniková

- rozpracované maturitné témy
- slovná zásoba
- konverzačné úlohy k témat
- počítanie
- písanie
- testy na písomnú a ústnu časť